DUKE
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

Treasure Room

Military
f 2/2
Wants | in front

ARMA
PACIS
FVLCRA

MILITARY DISCIPLINE:

OR, THE YONG ARTILLERY MAN.

Wherein is discourſed and ſhowne the Poſtures both of *Muſket* and *Pike*: the exacteſt way, &c.

Together with the Motions *which are to be uſed, in the* exerciſing *of a* Foot-company. *With divers and ſeverall* formes *and* figures *of* Battell; *with their* reducements; very neceſſary for all ſuch as are ſtudious in the Art *Military.*

By WILLIAM BARRIFF.

PSAL. 144. 1.

Bleſſed be the Lord my ſtrength which teacheth my hands to warre, and my fingers to fight.

LONDON,
Printed by *Thomas Harper*, for *Ralph Mab*, 1635.

Tr. R.
355.13
B2.75

TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE

Algernonne,

Earle of *Northumberland*, Lord of the *Honours* of *Cockermouth* and *Petworth*: Lord *Percy*, *Lucy*, *Poynings*, *Fitz-pain*, *Bryan* and *Lattimer*: Lord Lieutenant of his MAIESTIES Forces in the Counties of *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*; and Knight of the most Noble Order of the Garter.

Right Honorable:

THe *Glory* of the *Meridian Sun*, is the more resplendently set off; by the *foile* and *darknesse* of a *Shadow*:

279902

which is a perpetuall *follower* of his *Light*; as my ambition in all humble ſervice is, to be unto your Lordſhip: The memory of ſo many *Heroicall Anceſtors*, as (in all ages) have ennobliz'd your *potent Family*; together with their *Martiall* and *Renowned Atchievements*: doe for ever ſtand recorded, in the *Booke* of *Honour* and of *Fame*. And that (were occaſion fairly offered) your *Honour* hath *Spirit* and *Bravery* enough, in a *Military emulation*, to arrive up to the heighth of their *Glory*: your conſtant and Noble *Deportment* (as well in your *private carriage*; as of late dayes in your *publike Triumph*, when you were *inſtalled* into that moſt *Noble Order* of the *Garter*) doe moſt evidently *preſage* of you. This as it hath attracted

cted all *eyes* and *expectations*: So hath it incouraged my *low ambition* (among the reſt) to eſteeme *your Honour* a fit Patrone for a *Booke* of this *Nature*, your *innate* and *inbred vertues*; together with that *Courteſie*, *Nobleneſſe*, and *Affabilitie*, (the inſeperable *Companions* of *anciently deſcended Honour*) ſpeak you ſo eaſie, of *acceſſe*; that my YONG ARTILLERY-MAN deſpaireth not of *acceptance* & *admiſsion*, to kiſſe the *hands* of your great *Lordſhip*. The *firſt-fruits*, it is, of my weak *endevours*: and a *Collection*, meerly of my private *obſervations*. Such as it is, my humble requeſt unto your good *Lordſhip* is, that out of the accuſtomed *freedom* and *goodneſſe* of your *nature*; you would be pleaſed to deigne *acceptance* of it.

279902

And I withall beſeech your *Honour*, to give *pardon* unto that *preſumption*, which hath proceeded from *devotion*. I confeſſe it an *ambition* in mee, to *ſoare* ſo *loftily* in my *Dedication*. But as *Alexander* (ſometimes) refuſed not a *mean Preſent* of *fruit*, from the hands of a ſimple *Gardiner*: ſo my hope is, your *Honour* will hold mee excuſed for offering ſo *worthleſſe* and *meane* a *Mite* to ſo *great* and *honorable* a *Perſonage*. But conſidering that the *ſubiect* of my *Diſcourſe* is intended for the *bettering of the Souldiers knowledge of the trained Bands*; and that your *Lordſhip* is one of his *Majeſties Lieutenants*: it may prove a good *inducement* to your *Honours* liking (who are known to be ſo great a *lover* of your *Country*) to *vouchſafe* the

the *protection* and *patronage* of these my first *endevours*, whereby I shall for *ever* stand *obliged* in all *humilitie*, *and* remayne,

Your Honours *most*

humble and devoted

servant,

WILLIAM BARRIFF.

TO THE RIGHT VVorſhipfull, Sir *Ralph Boſvile*, Knight, Captaine of a Select Company of Foot in the County of *Kent*.

YOu may be pleaſed to remember (Noble Sir) how often you have *Importunde* me to *write ſomething* (by way of inſtruction) for the *bettering of the judgements of ſuch young Gentlemen and Souldiers whoſe mindes ſtand this way affected*. And although (for my own part) I can better mannage the *Pike* then the *Pen*; yet that I might not be wanting in all acknowledgement, I have taken upon me to ſatisfie your requeſt; which ſhall ever carry the *authority* of a *Command with it*. Expect not (I beſeech you Sir) to finde my *Booke* ſet forth with *fine phraſes*, nor to be deckt with *hiſtoricall diſcourſes*, of *forraine fought Battels*: this being the onely thing by me intended in it; to ſet forth the *exact grounds* of this our *moderne diſcipline*, for the exerciſing of a *foot Company*. Nor is it to be eſteemed a *ſmall advancement* to the knowledge of the *art Military*; even to have Taught this *little*, ſeeing it muſt be confeſſed to have beene one of the chiefeſt

feſt *meanes* to make *Philip* from a *poore Prince*, to become a *powerfull Monarch*; and his Sonne *Alexander a mighty Conquerer*. I meane his *exact obſervance* of the *true grounds of military Diſcipline*, which beginneth with the *inſtruction* of a *private Company*.

Adde hereunto (which I have alſo toucht upon) his frequent *practiſe* and *inuring* of his *Souldiers* to the *uſe* of *Armes:* together with his well *ordering* and *contriving* the ſeverall *formes* and *figures* of his *Battels*. Alwaies (by the way) obſerving how to make his *advantage*, either from the *time*, the *number*, or the *place*, or ſome other ſuch like *oportunity*. But not to cloy your *quainter eares* with *impertinent diſcourſes:* who are not onely a *Maſter* of *Armes*, but of *Arts*; alſo a Gentleman that hath beene *Captaine* either over *horſe* or *foot*; for the ſpace of theſe laſt *forty yeeres:* and from your very *infancy brought* up in the very *boſome* of the *Muſes*. So that you are now become a *Neſtor* for Counſell, an *Apollo* for *Muſicke*, and a *Mars* for the *Field*. But leſt by acknowledging your *worthy parts*, (your *native modeſty* being ſuch, that you never love to heare your owne *due deſerved praiſes*) I purchaſe a *frowne* for a *recompence:* I forbeare. My humble deſire now is, that your *Worſhip* will be pleaſed to accept of my *well meaning:* and although I be wanting in *artfull expreſſions*, yet to reſt aſſured, that I am yours in all *humble* and *heartie affection*, and ſhall ſtill continue

Your, though unworthy, yet
obedient Lievetenant,

WILLIAM BARRIFF.

1

TO THE WORTHY CAPTAINES, CAPTAINE EDVVARD DICHFIELD, and Captaine HENRY SANDERS, and to all the *Gentlemen* of the *private* and *loving* Societie *of* Cripplegate meeting. *W. B.* wisheth all health and *long continuance.*

Right Worthy

Aptaines, it is now something more then seven yeares, since the *beginning* of that *private* and *commendable exercise* of *Armes* by your two *Companies* together; how much experience it hath begot in your *Souldiers*, your selues be the *Iudges*. This must be confessed, that it is so *orderly* contrived, as to become no *hinderance* to mens more *necessary callings*. Yea it rather calls them the *earlier* unto it: for that the *Exercise* continueth onely *one houre* the *Thursday* of every weeke; and in the *Summer time*, ending at *seven* of the *clocke* in the *Morning*. Some there have been notwithstanding, that have held a *prejudicate opinion* of this meeting: conceiving that it would prove an *hinderance to the Artillery ground*. Nevertheless

theleſſe the proofe hath reported the quite contrarie: for that it hath become a great *meanes* towards the *advancement thereof*. And that by *ſending divers Gentlemen thither to enter themſelues therein, who before had not the leaſt conceit or purpoſe that way*. As for the *Souldiers* of that *meeting*, they neither *beat Drumme*, *diſplay Enſigne*, nor *diſcharge Musket*: But onely *exerciſe* their *Poſtures*, *Motions*, and *formes* of *Battell*, with *falſe fire* in their *pannes*. Which is the cauſe, that the *Souldiers* having attained ſome *little skill* in the *handling* of their *Armes*: preſently *deſire*, to *exerciſe with more liberty*; and ſo *enter* upon the *Artillery Garden*. Wherefore (moſt worthy *Captains*) you ſhall do well to *cheriſh* your *diligent* and *induſtrious Souldiers*: that ſo they may be *heartened* to perſiſt, in ſo *honourable* and *commendable* an *entendment*. It being ſuch an exerciſe whereby *God* may gaine *glory*, the *King* and *Kingdome*, *honour*; your *ſelues*, *credit*; and your *Souldiers*, *skill*: For *my owne part*, I profeſſe and acknowledge my *ſelfe* to be one of the *firſt beginners of it*: and do ſtill continue a *member* of the *ſame*. And this maketh me the more *ſilent*, though ſtill I *wiſh in heart the continuance of ſo friendly a ſocietie*. And therefore (*fellow Souldiers*) I pray you *accept* of my *good will* for the *deed*: for were I as *able* as I am *willing*; I then, with the *Poet*,

Would conſecrate your Memories to time,
That yours might Live, when I am turn'd to ſlime.

Yours in all ſervice,

WILLIAM BARRIFF.

To all worthy Commanders, *and brave* Souldiers.

GAllant brave *Sonnes* of *Mars* you muſt not looke
That here's ought worth your *reading* in this *Book*,
Since I intend not further for to goe
Then to the *Letters* of our *Chriſt-croſſe-row* :
To ſhew the *Vowels*, or to learn to *ſpell*
In *Diſciplines* high ſtrains I will not mell.
But if, perhaps, you have a mind to ſcan
Or ſpie faults in the *Yong Artillery-man*,
I pray you for *your credits* as *mine owne*
You'l picke no fault till you be ſure 'tis one
And then (perhaps) when *Reaſon* taking place,
Opinion muſt *retreit* with foule diſgrace.
Yet if you truly ſhall an *Errour* ſpie
Tell me my *fault*, I'le not in *Error* die.
Then *worthy Followers* in great *Mars* his *traine*,
That to peruſe my *worthleſſe worke* will deigne,
Iudge but the beſt, and you, perhaps, ſhall ſee
The next I write ſhall a *farre better* bee
In the, mean time, this is the *beſt* I have
Prove and *approve*. And more I will not *crave*.

W. B.

To Captaine *Walter Neale*, now Captaine of the *Artillery Garden:*

and to all the reſt of the *Worthy Captaines*, *Lieftenants*, *Enſignes*, *Serjeants*, and other *Gentlemen* of that noble *Society*: *W. B.* wiſheth all *increaſe* of *knowledge* and *continuance* of *Love* and *Vnity.*

RIght worthy Souldiers of *th' Artillery*,
Me thinkes I ſee ſome of you looke awry,
Telling me *I've done our Garden wrong*
And that in *Souldier-ſhip I am too yong*:
That the *worſt Souldier* of three *hundred men*
Should dare in *Diſcipline* to uſe his *Pen*,
And he that th'other day ſcarce knew a *Ranke*
To *write a Booke* ſhould now be growne ſo *cranke*:
But ſpare your *Anger* for this *Booke* you ſee
Can neither bring *reproch* to *you* nor *mee*:
If for *meane matter* I ſhall be detected
From a *yong Souldier much* is not *expected*:
If any ſay I have done *prety well*
They needs muſt thinke ſhould *you write* 'twould *excell*,
Like *Lads* at *Waſters* I but *lead the way*
That *better Gameſters* may come in *to play*.
Therefore be pleas'd if any *fault* be *found*
No *ſhame* at all can unto *you redound*.
If ought be *good*'ith' *Garden* 'twas *me ſhowne*
If ought be *ill* the *Errour* is *mine owne*.
Then as I from amongſt *you learn't* my *skill*,
So grant me *love* your *favour* and *good will*.

Yours ever *William Barriff*.

To the Reader.

COurteous *Reader*, although I have ſet forth this ſmall Treatiſe, principally ayming at the *benefit* of my *Country*, yet I know that ſome will not be wanting, to *diſparage* both the *workman* and the *worke*, the *matter* and the *manner*. For ſuch is the *miſery* of the *times*, and the *malice* of *men*; that the *frothy Depraver*, ſhall found (in ſome men) an opinion of his *worth*, by *detracting* and *undervaluing* other *mens merits*: For mine own part, I ingenuouſly confeſſe, that amongſt many in our owne *Ground*, I was the *meaneſt* both for *skill* and *ſcholler ſhip*, to have undertaken a *worke* of this nature; but being continually *preſt* by my *acquaintance*: ſome for the *Poſtures*, others for the *Motions*, and by ſome againe for *Figures*, I being alwaies willing to further men this way affected; granted and gave to ſome men *Copies*, and ſuffered others to peruſe my *Notes*, which I had placed in an old waſte *Paper-booke*. But at length, *time* and mens *tongues* together, had begot an *opinion, that I had writ a booke*. Which was ſo *freely divulged*, that I was requeſted by ſome, to know when it would *come forth* of the *Preſſe*; when as yet I had not the leaſt *conceit*, to put *pen* to *paper*

tending to this *purpose*. So that being *engaged* something in my *credit*, and withall *requested* by a right *worthy Knight*, my *Captaine*, who had power to *command:* And lastly, being *thrust on* by the *importunity* of some of my *familiar friends:* I haue put my *Card* amongst the rest into the *Bunch* to bee *shuffled*: not much caring where it be *dealt*, so it be not mixt with the —— ——If any carpe at the *plainenesse* of the *stile*, I conceiue that it *fits best* with the *subiect:* workes of this nature, chiefly requiring it. If *such*, whom *opinion* hath made *proud*, and *custome*, *captious*; shall happen to be my *Supervisors*, to them I say, that it is *easier to finde faults*, *then mend them*; and to *mend Bookes*, *then to make them*. But to the *Courteous* and *skilfull*, whose *better parts* will yeeld *better fruits*, I shall request their *favourable censure*, and that with their judgements, they will *mend* what by *over-sight* I have *mist*. For which their *loves*, I shall ever stand *engaged:* and remaine

Their thankefull friend and Servant,

WILLIAM BARRIFF

To my loving Friend, The *Author*.

Omer eterniz'd is for writing what
Achilles and his *Myrmidons* did at
The Siege of *Troy*. I envie not his fame,
But needs muſt future *Ages* greatly blame,
If they forget to Memoriſe thee too,
That ſhow'ſt not what was done, but how to doo.

Rowland Gwyn.

To his much eſteemed Friend, and fellow Souldier, the *Author*.

Ritticke, obſerve thy diſtance, cenſure not,
Nor ſpend thy judgement like an Ideot
That nothing knows; If knowing, know thou then,
Thou muſt be rank't amongſt the Envious men.
If once thou doſt attempt to contradict
The matter that this Booke conteins in it:
The Method's plaine; not deckt with complements,
Thoſe frivolous, idle, needleſſe ſupplements.

The ſubſtance ponderous is; no fond conceit
Affronts thee, friend. With ſhame they ſhall retreit;
And ſo retrit, as not to charge againe
In Front, in Reere, or Flanks. Thou ſhalt diſdaine
All Formaliſts, that faine would Souldiers ſeeme;
Who much expreſsive are, in judgement greene.

Andrew Wheatley.

Ex Hoſpitio Gray.

In Amicum Willielmum Barriff.

YOung, and ſo old in Martiall Diſcipline?
Diſtruſt will ſay, This work is none of thine.
But I, that know it, will averre the ſame
To be thine owne, and not anothers fame.
A noble Souldier *ſcorns to be ſo baſe*
By others Worth to purchaſe his owne Grace.
And ſuch is BARRIFF. *What his Booke doth ſpeake,*
It is his owne. Let Envie ſwell and breake.

Amicus H. P.

The

THe Art Military (how e're ſuppos'd)
Is hard like other Arts; yet here diſclo'd,
In ſuch a manner that who e're he be
That hath in it but learn'd his A B C.
Without difficulty, with little paine,
Such knowledge in this nobleſt Art may gaine:
That he may ſay, and do as much as ſome,
That for this Art, have travel'd Chriſtendome.
All by the learned helpe of BARRIFFS skill,
Learned, I ſay, ſay others what they will.
But if they ſpeake 'gainſt this he hath put forth,
They will betray in them there's no ſuch worth:
For this in him there is no fault at all.
Except in this, to teach this Art to all.
Perſiſt then noble Friend, to th' world deſcry
What worth lyes hid in our Artillery.
And we that long to learne this Art ſhall ſay,
Thanks be to BARRIFF, he hath ſhowne the way.

Rich. Clement.

On his much esteemed friend, the Author.

AS London, Englands *farre fam'd*
Emperie,
In her brave Garden *of* Artillery,
With Reason glory may: becauſe therin
Is exercis'd exacter Diſcipline,
By motions *and apt firings; than is done*
In any other Place of Chriſtendome.
So may that Garden *as deſervedly,*
(Accompliſht Barriff*) joy and boaſt in thee:*
Who ſtil'ſt thy ſelfe The young Artillery-Man,
Of thy abounding modeſty. *Yet can*
Thy knowne experience thereby vailed be
No more than Sun-beames *by a* Tyrannie:
Why young? *Is't cauſe chou'lt ſtill a* Learner *be?*
" *Even ſo muſt all that ayme at* Excellencie.
New Accidents, and expert mens direction,
Brings th'arte of Warre ſtill neerer to perfection.
'Tis ſaid, great Alexander *wept, for that*
He no more worlds *could finde to* ſubjugate.
And yet if Hee *before* Oſtend *had beene,*
He might have eaſier wept, *than* gotten in.
Thy practicke *part of* Drilling: *I approve,*
As meriting thy Countries thankes *and* love.

The

The rather, that I oft have ſeene thee *doe*
A Captaines Office, *and a* Souldiers *too.*
With ſuch exact dexterity, *as none*
Could ſay thou *cam'ſt* ſhort *in* perfection,
To forraine Diſcipliners *(neere or farre,)*
Though daily train'd up *in the* Schoole *of* Warre.
Yet as in thy aſſum'd Title: *ſo,*
Th'art modeſt *in thy faire* expreſſions *too.*
For thou *adorn'ſt not thy book's* Frontiſpiece,
With glorious Titles, *to* endeere *its* Price.
As Th'art of Warre *: or* Souldiers Academy.
But thee *confin'ſt within a* Company,
Or Squadrons exerciſe. *And yet a way*
To ſet a greater *Body in Array;*
Thereby diſcover'ſt. *Onwards then, and ſtead,*
Thy Nation *for ſupplying at her need.*
Thy Country *with large* Troupes *well-diſciplin'd,*
For which, occaſion *will hereafter finde,*
A meane to crowne *thy* merit. *Whilſt thy friends*
Wiſh thy Deſignes, *acquire their hop'd for* ends.

Ia. Hayward ex Hoſpitio Graienſij.

Chap. I.

Concerning Postures and handling Armes.

The first rudiments for the Discipline of Infantry ought to be an Instruction, for the well mannaging of their Armes; whereby they may be brought, to use them with ease and delight: whereas to the contrary (without exercise) both sorts of Armes, wil become a troublesom burden, unto the unskilfull Bearers. No man is borne a Souldier, neither can any attain, to be skilfull in the Art Military without practice. But by practice is gained knowledge, knowledge begets courage and confidence; few or none being fearefull to execute what by

frequent practice they have throughly learned.

Wherefore it is necessary for every one that intends any proficiency in this part of the Art military, to be instructed in the Postures and well handling of their Armes; a thing much to be desired in our Trained Bands, though small hope of amendment. Seeing the Souldiers are scarce called forth to exercise either Posture, or Motion once in foure or five yeares. Whose the fault is I know not, only I pray God that it may be amended, lest shame and infamy be the least of euils which our careless security may bring upon us: Yet pardon this digression, for my zeale to my Countries good had almost transported mee beyond the bounds of my intent, but of this no more. I will now come to the postures of the Musket and Pike: which, I conceive, are fittest to begin from the taking up of their Armes, and arming the Souldiers concluding them with the laying down of their Armes, or disarming them. But before I begin the Postures: Mee thinks I heare some already inquiring what is a Posture. Wherefore that I may satisfie them, and not be troublesome to others. In briefe thus.

Posture in a Souldier is the garbe or figure, that he useth in the handling of his Armes, consisting of severall Motions for atchieving of each Posture. The Motion being the working part, the Posture the alteration or act, either in circumstance or matter. As to rest your Musket being one Posture, to shoulder your Musket another, so likewise for the rest, howbeit some perchance will ob-

object,(as formerly hath bin to one of *Athens*, making a long Oration in the praise of *Hercules* his valour) who ever doubted of it. So to me who ever questioned these for Postures: yet I have known them not only questioned, but written against, peremptorily concluding that there are but three Postures to be used for the Musket, whose errours I shal easily confute. But more of this after the Postures of the Musket. Wherefore for the more orderly proceeding conceive their Armes to lie before them on the ground, and then the first command will be, to stand to their Armes.

The Postures of the Musket.

TAke up your Bandeliers.
Put on your Bandeliers.
Take up your Match.
Place your Match.
Take up your Musket and Rest.
Rest your Musket.
Now if you please you may performe your saluting Posture.
Poyse your Musket.
Shoulder your Musket.
Take your Rest into your right hand, and you are armed ready to March.
Now to begin to make ready, which may be done either standing or marching.
Take your Match between the fingers of your right hand.
Put your Rest string about your left Wrist, and carry your Rest in your left hand.

Return your Match between the fingers of your left hand.
Unſhoulder your Musket and Poyſe.
Ioyn your Reſt to the outſide of your Musket.
Open, Cleer, Prime, Shut } your Pan.
Caſt off your looſe Corns.
Blow off your looſe Corns, and bring about your Musket to the left ſide.
Treile your Reſt, & ballance your Musket in your left hand.
Charge with { Powder. Bullet.
Draw forth, Shorten } your Scowring ſtick.
Put your ſcowring ſtick into your Musket.
Ram home your Charge.
Withdraw, Shorten, Return } your ſcowring ſtick.
Bring forward your Musket and Reſt.
Poyſe your Musket and recover your Reſt.
Ioyn your Reſt to the outſide of your Musket.
Draw forth your Match.
Blow your Coale.
Cock, Fit } your Match.
Guard your Pan.
Blow the Aſh from your Coale. Open,

Open your Pan.
Preſent upon your Reſt.
Give fire breſt high.
Diſmount your Musket, joyning your Reſt to the outſide of your Musket.
Uncock and return your Match.
Cleer } your Pan.
Shut }
Poiſe } your Musket.
Shoulder }
Take your Match between the fingers of the right hand.
Take your Reſt into your right hand, cleering your ſtring from your wriſt.
Return your Reſt into the left hand, the ſtring looſe.
Return your Match into your left hand.
Unſhoulder your Musket and Poyſe.
Reſt your Musket.
Set the But-end of your Musket on the ground.
Lay down your { Musket and Reſt. / Match.
Take off } your Bandeliers.
Lay down }
March from your Armes.

There is likewiſe the Sentinell Poſture, which is, The Muskettier having his Musket charged with Bullet, his Match cockt, his Pan guarded, ſtands with his Musket reſted to per-

forme ſuch duty as ſhall be commanded or given him in charge. Some have likewiſe taught to make ready on, or from the Sentinell Poſture: But note that as none comes to ſtand Sentinell but comes ready charged: So if any occaſion happen that he muſt give fire in the time of his ſtanding Sentinel, it cauſeth a generall Alarme. So that he will have no fit time to make ready upon his Reſt: Wherefore, I conceive it ſuperfluous; but will ever conforme to better judgement.

We have alſo the Funerall Poſture, which from the Reſt is to be performed at 3. Motions, which cannot ſo well be expreſt in writing, as it will expreſſe it ſelfe in Action. Wherefore ſeeing that it is rather an Ornament to Obſequies, than truly neceſſary for Armies I will not ſpend more time about it, but come to the Poſtures of the Pike. Yet before I paſſe upon them, give me leave to anſwer ſome, which out of a Criticall humour will alwayes be carping at others, condemning theſe Poſtures, ſaying, There are more by halfe, then are either good or uſefull; and that there are no more Poſtures to be uſed, but Make ready, Preſent, Give fire. The which wee will not deny that in Service there are any other uſefull: notwithſtanding I would have them to know, that Make ready is no Poſture, but a word of Command, including all Poſtures, from the firſt Arming of the Souldier to the preſent: or if the Muskettier be charged, ſhouldered or both, then the word (Make ready) commands the proſecution of the reſt of your Poſtures which are between the Poſture you

you then immediatly are at, when the word is given, and the other Posture, Present: for which reason when wee teach Muskettiers at first it is most necessary to instruct them punctually, from Posture to Posture: Which being once attained, he manageth his Armes more surely, more comely, with more celerity, and with better execution: and at the first may as easily be taught the best way. But if he have got an habit of doing ill there wil be as much or more pains spent in reclayming his errours, as at first to teach him the best, safest, and readiest way.

Chap. II.

Of the Postures of the Pike.

That which followeth next of course is the Posture of the Pike: Wherefore that we may observe order in our proceeding; wee will likewise conceive their Pikes to lie in like manner before them on the ground: And then, as before, the first Command will be, To stand to their Armes.

Handle } your Pikes.
Order }

To your { open / cloſe } Order.

Charge with the But-end of your Pike at the inſide of your right Foot, your Pike in the left hand, drawing your Sword over the left Arme.

Charge to the { Right, / Left, / Reere.

Order your Pikes, and put up your Swords.

Note that theſe Charges at the Foot are to receive a deſperate Enemy on Horſe, upon a ſtand in ſome ſtrait, or other place of advantage, the Muskettiers to give fire over the Pikemens heads, or elſe-where, at the diſcretion of the Commander.

Port
Comport
Cheeke
Treile
Order } your Pikes.

Charge to the Reere is to be underſtood alwayes to the left about, becauſe it is 3. times a neerer way then charging to the right about.

Charge { Front / Right / Left / Reere } to the
Shoulder your Pikes } Order as you were.

Advance
Port
Comport
Cheeke } your Pikes.

Trile

Treile your Pikes

Charge to the { Front / Right / Left / Reere } Advance as you were.

Shoulder / Port / Comport / Checke / Treile } your Pikes.

Shoulder your Pikes

Charge to the { Front / Right / Left / Reere } Shoulder as you were.

From Comport, Cheeke, or Treile, the Pikeman may at the discretion of the Commander charge either to the Front, Reere, or both Flanks, as shall be necessary or thought expedient. Wherfore we shall not need to do it but once over, for the Charges will be all alike, whether you Comport from Order, from Advance, or Shoulder. And so likewise for Cheek and Treile, &c.

From Comport Charge to the { Front / Right / Left / Reere } Comport as you were.

Cheek your Pikes.

From the Cheek Charge to the { Front / Right / Left / Reere } Cheek as you were.

Treile

Treile your Pikes.

From the Treile / Charge to the { Front, Right, Left, Reere } Treile as you were.

Order / Lay down } your Pikes.

I ſhall undergo the cenſure of ſome, for that they will finde more Poſtures of the Pike here then formerly they knew of, and ſo by their concluſion more then there is any need of; for now-a-dayes there are ſuch that will limit diſcipline, to the verge of their owne knowledge; and whatſoever elſe they ſhall ſee either acted or written by others that is without the liſts of their kenning, they will peremptorily conclude for ſuperfluous and improper, howſoever I ſhall alwayes referre my ſelfe to the judgment of the more judicious.

The charges of the Pike are twofold either for defenſe or offence. Charges underhand or overhand: but divers and different they are from their ſeverall wayes and Poſtures from which they are or may be done, although they are not all alwayes uſefull, yet at ſometimes they may be uſefull, and therefore very requiſite to be known to all ſuch as either are, or at leſt would be accounted for good Souldiers.

As I have ſet down the Poſtures themſelves both of Musket and Pike, ſo it were not much amiſſe, if that the Motions of Poſture were likewiſe here expreſt. But becauſe they will take up too much

much time,& fill too much paper,and the Subject it ſelfe not pleaſing unto many;I will ſpare my labour, and my booke the lines, rather ſuffering the cenſure of curtail'd brevity,then tedious prolixity.

Chap. III.

Of the Drum.

OVr Souldiers being ſufficiently inſtructed in the Poſtures of ſuch Armes as they carry, or are appointed to uſe: the next thing they are to learn, is the knowledge of the ſeverall beats of the Drum, which is as requiſite to be learnt of the Souldier, as any thing elſe in this way. For the Drum is the voice of the Commander, the ſpurre of the valiant, the heart of the coward, and by it they muſt receive their directions when the roring Canon,the claſhing of armes,the neighing of horſes, and other confuſed noiſe cauſeth, that neither Captaine nor other Officer can be heard. Wherefore it will be moſt neceſſary for him to learne theſe ſixe ſeverall Beats, *viz.*

1 A Call. 3 A March. 5 A Battaile.
2 A Troope. 4 A Preparative. 6 A Retreit.

1 By a Call, you muſt underſtand to prepare to heare preſent Proclamation, or elſe to repaire to your Enſigne.

2 By

2 By a Troope understand to shoulder your Muskets, to advance your Pikes, to close your Rankes and Files to their order, and to troope along with (or follow) your Officer to the place of Randesvous or elsewhere.

3 By a March you are to understand to take your open order in ranke, to shoulder both Muskets and Pikes, and to direct your March either quicker or slower, according to the beat of the Drum.

4 By a Preparative you are to understand to close to your due distance, for skirmish both for ranke and file, and to make ready, that so you may execute upon the first command.

5 By the Battaile or charge, understand the continuation or pressing forward in order of battaile without lagging behind, rather boldly stepping forward into the place of him that fals dead, or wounded before thee.

6 By a Retreit understand an orderly retiring backward, either for reliefe, for advantage of ground, or for some other politicall end, as to draw the enemy into some ambushment, or such like. Much more might be written concerning the Drum, but this may suffice for the present.

Chap. IV.

Of Rankes and Files, their places and dignities.

NOw that our Souldiers are somewhat skilfull in managing of their armes, and no lesse capable of the severall beats of the Drum, it is high time for them to know the difference between a Ranke, and a File. Wherefore know that a Ranke is a row of men, sometimes more, sometimes fewer, standing, moving, or marching even a breast, or (as some write) pouldron to pouldron, or shoulder to shoulder. A File is a sequence of men, standing one behinde another, backe to belly in a straight line from Front to Reere, consisting sometimes of 6. 8. or 10. men. on some occasions the *Spaniards* make them 12. deepe. But when any one would shew much variety of exercise, then 8. will be the more pliant and dividual number, yet for service in the field, where men are not altogether so expert (as I could wish our Country-men were) 10. men is the fittest number, not onely for the cause aforesaid, but also because that 10. is the square root of a 100. and is a better number to draw Companies into grosser bodies.

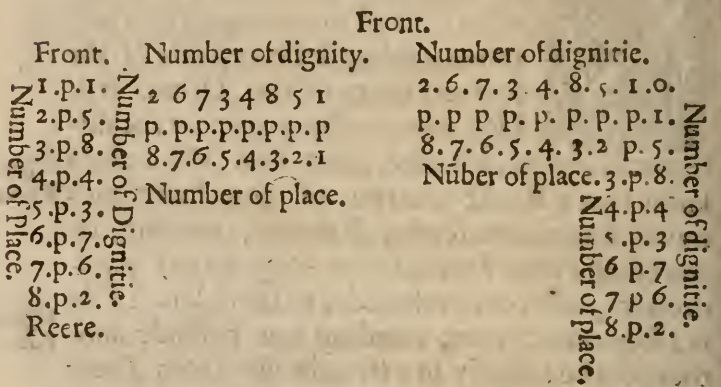
What is a Ranke.

What is a File.

And now I thinke it would not be much amisse if I should here insert the severall places of dignity and precedency in Ranke, as also in File.

Wherefore

Wherfore becauſe that Files are firſt to be drawn forth, and that by adding or joyning of Files together, Rankes are made; we will begin firſt with Files. Wherefore conceive their honour according to the figures or numbers hereunder placed, firſt in File, then of Rank, laſtly of both cõjoyned.



It will not be of it ſelfe ſufficient that I have both marked and figured the places and dignities to each particular man in his File and Ranke, but it will be looked for of ſome, that I ſhould backe my opinions either with ſound and good reaſons of mine owne, or at the leaſt with the opinions of ſome others: as for ſuch as have employed themſelves upon this ſubject, they have been as divers in their judgements, as their number, each man having a fancie to his owne way. And if it were much materiall, I might have here demonſtrated unto you the ſeverall opinions of *Leo*, *Robertellus*, *Count Mansfield*, Sir *Thomas Kellie*, and many others: whoſe workes being extant, I will ſpare the labour.

labour. But above all the reſt that ever I read, Captaine *Iohn Bingham* hath in my judgement beſt delivered himſelfe in this particular: which although he have expreſt by way of Tetarchies and Mirrarchies, yet the ſame may be underſtood as well by Rankes and Files. His words are theſe: * Every "Tetarch is over foure Files, in all which the "Commander that hath the right, hath the firſt "place; he that hath the point of the left, the ſe- "cond place; he that ſtandeth on the right hand "next to him, the third place. The laſt place is his "that ſtandeth next to the Commander of the "right point on the left hand: He demonſtrates it "by way of figure thus.

* In the Tacticks of Ælian *lib.* 1. the Notes of the 10. Chapter.

	p.	m.	m.	m.	m.	p.	p.	m.	m.	m.	m.	p.	
Right wing	1.	5.	1.	4.	8.	4.	3.	7.	3.	2.	6.	2.	Left wing.

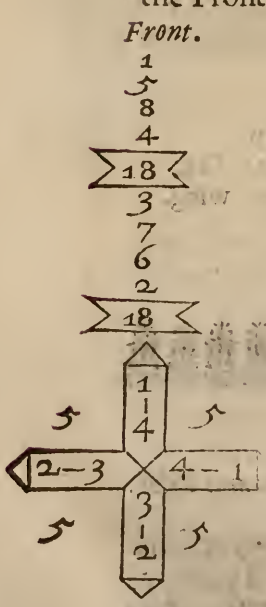
The Middle.

CHAP. V.

Reaſons for precedency of dignity in Rankes and Files.

I Shall now endevour to give ſome reaſons for theſe ſeverall places of dignitie in Ranke and File. And firſt for that Geometricall proportion gives both life and being to orderly

orderly discipline, consider that all parts of the body ought to be answerable. Wherefore seeing that the joyning of Files and Rankes produceth greater Bodies; it is necessary that a true proportion should be kept from the beginning: and that in drawing forth of Files they observe to make the Reere halfe files answerable in skill and worth to the Front halfe file. And that the file-leaders, and halfe-rankes of the left flanke, should be equivalent in worth, skill, and valour to the right flanke, that the Reere division hold like proportion with the Front division, and that all parts of the body be ballanced with true proportion, so neere as the knowledge of the Souldiers, and the number of the men will give you leave; and that there may be correspondency in their worth, place, and dignity, you may observe by adding the figures of number together, which are in the Margent, where you shal finde that the dignity being added together of the Front halfe file, makes the number of 18. And the worth of the Reere division being in like manner added, makes the like number. So likewise shal you finde the dignity and worth of the File leaders of the left flanke, to paralell the worth of those on the right flanke by the same rule. If you will have it yet more cleere, observe that the file leader is the chiefe in his File, the bringer up the second, the halfe File leader the third, the last



laſt man of the front halfe file the fourth. Now note that as the worth of the firſt precedes the ſecond, ſo the worth of the third exceeds the fourth. Now adde the firſt worth to the fourth worth, and that makes five. And the ſecond worth to the third, and it makes the ſame number; ſo that there is equalitie throughout the Battell both in Front, Reere, and Flankes: for it were unreaſonable, that all the chiefe men ſhould be on the right Flanke, and all the worſt on the left. For the left muſt be oppoſed to the enemies right. The File leader ought to be worthieſt, becauſe he hath the command of his File, and marcheth the firſt againſt his enemy. The bringer up ought to be the ſecond, becauſe his place of march is in the Reere, and is in moſt danger, ſhould the enemy charge on that part. The halfe file leader is the third in honour, becauſe that when the halfe file is taken off upon any occaſion, he is the leader (unleſſe they be commanded to face about) the laſt man of the front halfe file is the fourth man in dignitie, for when the Reere diviſion is taken off, then he is the Bringer up. The next man to the file-leader hath the fift place of honour, for that one doubling brings him into the front. The next man before the Bringer-up hath the ſixt place of honour, for that if the body be faced about, one doubling brings him into the Front accidentall, or keeping the proper front by once doubling of rankes, he becomes Bringer-up to his File-leader. The ſeventh place of honour is his that marcheth next after the halfe-file leader, for that when the halfe

files double the Front, or marcheth forth, then one doubling, ranks him even with the Front. The eight and last place of honour, is his that is the third from the Front, the File being but 8. deepe, which may also be made a File-leader, though with more trouble than the rest: for by countermarching Front and Reere into the middest, and then facing to the former front, & after doubling of ranks, makes him likewise a file-leader. Now as every mans dignitie is more or lesse in his File, so is all his ranke with him. Wherefore this that hath already beene said, may suffice to demonstrate unto those which as yet are ignorant of the severall places of dignity, both in Ranke and File. I might have enforced many other reasons concerning the dignity of number and place: but I have insisted longer upon this subject, then at first I intended, which makes me the more willing, though somewhat abruptly to breake from it, and come to shew the manner of joyning or drawing up of Files into forme of battell. And therefore this may serve for all, the Serjeant that hath order to place them, is to lead them up according to their worth and honour. As first the right hand file; then the left hand file; and so the other files successively within them according to their severall worths and places. As by the following figure you may more plainely perceive.

Dignity

Dignity of place.

Left Flanke. Number of place.											Right Flanke. Dignity of place.
	0	2	6	7	3	4	8	5	1	0	
	1	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	1	
	2	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	5	
	3	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	8	
	4	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	4	
	5	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	3	
	6	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	7	
	7	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	6	
	8	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	m	2	
	0	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	

Number of place.

Reere.

If there be any that shall say these are nicities, and of no repute amongst Souldiers, I dare say they have been well reputed of by good Souldiers, no disparagement unto the fault-finders (if there happen to be any such.) As for the noble, worthy, and well-knowing Souldiers, I am almost confident that out of their true-speaking judgements, they will eyther conclude that it is so used, or at the least that it ought so to be; but if this can worke no effect with the [illegible] I leave every man freely to his owne judgement, desiring the judicious, alwaies to hold a favourable opinion of my well-meaning.

Chap. VI.

Of the severall distances.

Now that our Souldiers have attained some small knowledge in the use of their Armes (me thinkes like some of our little-knowing souldiers of the trained Bands) they already begin to be ambitious of File-leaders places; therefore that their owne weakenesses may light them to reade their owne follies, we will see how they will behave themselves in exercise amongst the Companie. Wherein the first thing we are to instruct them in, is their distances. But because it is held by some a matter disputable, whether distance be one of the motions or no: We will first declare what is distance. To which I answer, that indeed Distance it selfe is no motion, but there is motion in producing such distance; for Distance is the space of ground between man and man, either in File or Ranke, having relation onely to the place between each partie. All the rest of the motions having not onely relation to the one, but the other. Wherefore not to spend more time in a matter so apparant, we will say that the discipline of a foot-companie consists chiefly in distance and motion. And therefore seeing that

distance is the ground of motion, and that no motion can be performed without distance, wee will leave to discourse it, and fall to the matter it selfe, and shew how many sorts of Distance is ordinarily used in our moderne discipline, which are these foure here under named, *viz.*

Close Order,	which is both in Rank & File	One foot and a halfe.
Order,		Three foot.
Open Order,		Sixe foot.
Double distãce,		Twelve foot.

It hath been the opinion of some ancient Commanders, that the distance of Ranke, was alwaies double the distance of File, although they went both under one and the same denomination. As that order in File was three foot, order in Ranke sixe foot, open order in file sixe foot, open order in ranke twelve foot, and so of other distances. But the best received opinions hold them to be alike both in ranke and file.

There is to be considered in distance these three especially, that is,

Distance { For March. For Motion. For Skirmish.

You are to observe, that your distance for march is to be three foot between file and file, and sixe foot between ranke and ranke; distance for motion sixe foot both in ranke and file, distance for wheelings and skirmish three foot in ranke and file. Onely if you were to receive a charge from the horse, it is necessary for your files of Pike-men to be at close order. Wherefore we will rehearse

all the ordinary wayes for the opening, and closing both of files and rankes. But in the first place command them to even their Rankes, and straighten their Files, to be silent & attend to their words of command and direction, &c.

Rankes and files to your close order.

In motion of Files you are to observe your Leader.

Files open to the right } to your order.
Rankes open forward }

Files open to the right } to your open order.
Rankes open forward }

In motion of Rankes you are to observe your right hand man.

Files open to the right } to your double distance.
Rankes open forward }

Files close to the right } to your open order.
Rankes close forward }

Files close to the right } to your order.
Rankes close forward }

Files close to the right } to your close order.
Rankes close forward }

Files open to the left } to your order.
Rankes open backward }

Files open to the left } to your open order.
Rankes open backward }

Files open to the left } to your double distance.
Ranks open backwards }

Files close to the left } to your open order.
Ranks close backward }

Files close to the left } to your order.
Ranks close backward }

Files close to the left } to your close order.
Ranks close backward }

Files } open { right and left } to your order.
Ranks } to the { front & reere }

Files

Files } open { right and left } to your open or-
Ranks } to the { front and reere } der.
Files } open { right and left } to your double
Ranks } to the { front and reere } distance.
Files } close { right and left inward } to your o-
Ranks } to the { middest——— } pen order.

Note that when Files open to the right, the left-hand file must stand fast, every file taking his distance from the file next his left hand: And when they open to the left, then the right hand file stands, every file taking his distance from the file next his right hand. Observe also that when Ranks open forwards, then the last ranke stands, every Ranke taking his distance from the Ranke next behinde him: And when they open backwards, then the first Ranke is to stand, every Rank to take his distance from the Ranke next before him. You are likewise to take notice in the action, that you are either to face to the right, or to the right about.

Note also that in closing of Files, if it be to the Right, then contrary to the opening, the right hand file stands; the rest closing to the Right, taking their distance from their next right hand file. If you close to the left, then the left hand file stands; the rest of the files closing to the left, taking their distance in like manner. When Files close to the right and left, then they close inward, taking their distance from the files within them, neerer to the middest of the bodie. Also note, that when Files are commanded to open to the right and left (or by division) it must be outward. If

Ranks cloſe to Front and Reere, then the firſt and laſt Ranke ſtand; the others taking their diſtances from them. If they cloſe Ranks towards the center or midſt, then they cloſe towards their two middlemoſt Ranks.

It is not required that every Captaine or other Officer that ſhall exerciſe a Company, ſhall uſe all theſe ſeveral openings, and cloſings which are here expreſt, but rather that he ſhall make uſe of ſo many of them, as he ſhall thinke fit for his preſent occaſion or exerciſe. Although they all may be uſefull at ſome time or other. I may ſpare examples, for it muſt needs be apparant to the meaneſt capacities.

Chap.

Of marching the Company in Diuiſions at length, the order and places of the Officers, and againe drawing them into forme of Battell.

NOw that our Souldiers are ſomewhat expert in their diſtances, we will next draw them forth into a long March. Wherefore note, that our files muſt be at order, and our Ranks at open order: The Muskettiers of the right flanke, are to make the Van, and to march next after the Captaine: The Pikes are to make the battell, and to march after the Enſigne, either in one or two diuiſions, according to their number. The Muskettiers of the left flanke (ſometimes called the ſecond diuiſion of Muskets) make the Reere Guard, which is led commonly by the ſecond Serjeant. Howbeit if there be but one diuiſion of Pikes, then the eldeſt (or chiefeſt) Serjeant leads the ſecond diuiſion of Muskettiers. If the Company be but ſmall, then it is beſt to make but two Diuiſions, one of the Muskettiers, another of the Pikes; For the placing of the reſt of the Officers, you may perceiue by the figure in the margent: Wherefore note that M. ſtands for Muskets, p. for Pikes, D. for Drummes, S. for Serjeants, E. for Enſigne, L. for Lieutenant, and C. for Captaine.

Note, If you have but three Drummes, then let the Drumme in the ſecond diuiſion of Pikes be wanting: If onely two; then upon a March, the firſt betweene the third and fourth ranke of the front diuiſion of Muskettiers. The ſecond betweene the third and fourth ranke of the ſecond diuiſion of Pikes.

Note that betweene each Diuiſion in March, there ought to be 12. foot diſtance; 6. foot betweene the Officer, and 6. foot behinde him.

Chap. VIII.

Of drawing the divisions up into a square.

Hen you would bring your body againe into Battalia, command your front division to make Alt or Stand; then give order to your Ensigne either by a Serjeant, or by some signe to leade up the first division of pikes on the left of the first division of Muskettiers, with his colours flying, and the Pikes to continue shouldered, so long as the Drumme beats a March. But if it beat a Troope, then the Pikes are to advance, and close their Ranks forward to their order, and so the Ensigne to troop them up with his colours fierld. The eldest Serjeant is to leade up the second division of Pikes; The second Serjeant in like manner is to leade up the second or reere Division of Muskettiers; each division still marching up to the left of that division next before it. The manner you may plainly see in the figure; where the front division is marked in the Reere with the letter A. The first Division of Pikes with the letter B. The second Division of pikes with C. The second Division of Muskettiers hath in the Reere the letter D. The other figure on the other leafe in form of a square shewes their standing, after the Divisions are led up.

C.
m m m m S 4
m m m m
m m m m
D.
m m m m
m m m m
m m m m
m m m m
m m m m
A.

E.
p p p p
p p p p
p p p p
D.
p p p p
p p p p
p p p p
S. 1.
p p p p
p p p p
B.
p p p p
D.
p p p p
p p p p
p p p p
p p p p
p p p p
S. 2.
m m m m
C.
m m m m
m m m m
m m m m
D.
m m m m
m m m m
m m m m
m m m m
L. D.

All the file-leaders standing even in front together making one Ranke.

E.

E C

| | | |

Chap. IX.

What is Facing, and the uſe of the word; whether to be uſed or refuſed.

Before we come to ſhew the varietie of *Facings* in the action, I thinke it will not be amiſſe to ſpeake a word or two in the way of definition: and therefore what is *Facing?* To which I anſwer, That *Facing* is a particular turning of the Aſpect from one part to another, whereby the Front proper becomes a Front accidentall: And a Front accidentall, may be reduced to his proper Front. There are ſome likewiſe that by no meanes will allow of the word Face: Concluding it altogether unneceſſarie; And no other word muſt be given, but, To the Right, To the left, &c. Yet I wonder that men will ſtumble at ſo ſmall a ſtraw, which cannot chuſe but be better uſed than refuſed. For the word Face is but one ſyllable, and quickly pronounced, and gives ſo cleare an expreſſion of the intent of the Commander that it concludes it neceſſary. As for example, Should you command a Company to double Rankes to the Right, and then command them as they were, and then ſay, To the Left, it might puzzle a good Souldier at the firſt, to diſcerne whether he ſhould face

or

or double: The like miſtake might bee among Countermarches: Wherefore I conceive that none can juſtly taxe it for ſuperfluous, ſeeing the eaſieſt expreſſion hath alwayes beene accounted for the beſt. Yet ſpare me, for my intent is not to over-ſway any man in his opinion, but rather to deliver mine; leaving all men freely to their owne likings.

If my intent were to make a great booke with a little matter, I might then here inſert figures for every particular Facing, and their Reducements to their firſt Poſture, which would take up divers ſheets of paper, and to little purpoſe. For I ſuppoſe that every man that knows any thing, may eaſily conceive the *Idea* of any ordinary Facing in his minde. Wherefore I will but ſhew one or two of the hardeſt. You are to note that in the Motion of Facings every man turnes on the Center, or Ball of the left foot, moving onely the right, the other being the keeper both of ranke and file.

In the exerciſe of the motion of facings, you are to be at open order in Ranke and File.

Face to the { Right, Left, Right and left, Right about, Left about, Right and left inward } As you were.

Face to the { Right angle, Left angle, Foure Angles }

When you face to any hand in the Reducement, you are to returne by the contrary.

The front halfe files ſtanding, it will be requiſite for the halfe files to the reere, to do as much by themſelues: whereby, they will the more aptly perceive, how that the ſubdiviſion goeth under the

the denomination of the halfe files, &c.

Halfe files face to the	Right.	As you were.
	Left.	
	Right and left.	
	Right about.	
	Left about.	
	Right and left inward	

There is another word which is ordinarily used and proper, for reducements of Facings, which is, To your Leader.

There is another Facing sometimes used, which is, Face to the center, and is when the body stands in some circular form, or else in an hollow square.

There is also a Facing, which causeth the Body to face to the front, reere, and flanks, which some call, Facing square.

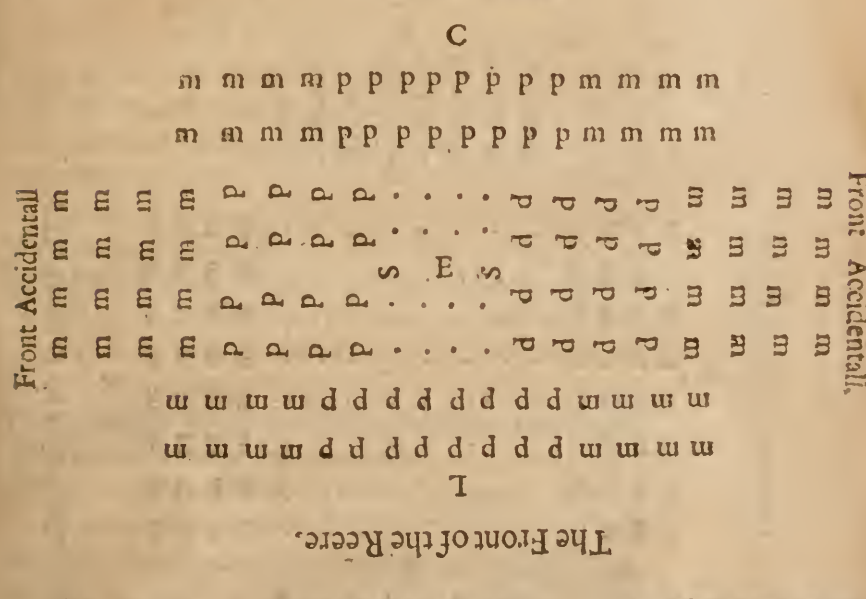
Chap. X.

Of Facing square, and how to performe it, the usefulnesse of facings, and the severall parts thereof.

When we instruct our Souldiers how to face square (if the Body be but 8. deepe) command; the two first ranks stand fast, the two last Ranks face about, the rest of the Body face to the right and left. If the Body be deeper we command more Ranks to the Front, and so likewise to the Reere. It is very necessary for young Souldiers

Souldiers to move 10. or 12. paces upon every motion of facings, whether they are entire, or divisionall. Now I will pricke two severall figures of facing, which will be sufficient to demonstrate all the rest.

Face square and march.



The words of Command, commonly used to produce this figure, are these as followeth.

The two first ranks stand.

The two last ranks face about.

The rest of the body face to the right and left, (then) march all.

When your Souldiers begin any motion, let them advance their Armes.

When they come to a stand, and have performed their motion, let them order their Armes.

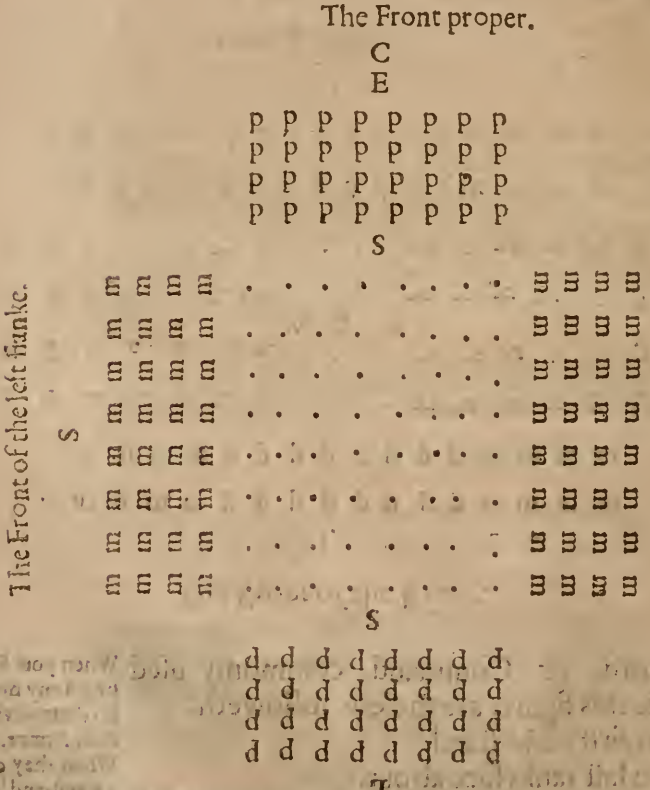
To

To reduce them to their first order.

Face all about to the right, march and close your divisions.

Face all to your Leader (who then stands at his front proper.)

Facing square another way, & marching upon it.



The

The words of command cuſtomarily uſed to produce this figure are theſe as followeth,

Muskettiers face to the right and left.

Halfe files of Pikes face about to the right (then) march all.

To reduce them to their former order,

Face all about to the right, march and cloſe your diviſions.

Face all to your Leader.

Facings are ſo uſefull and neceſſary, that you may as well diſpenſe with any one of the grounds of Diſcipline, as with them; for they are uſefull almoſt upon all occaſions, and not onely ſooner executed than any other of the motions, but may be needfull when Wheelings and Countermarches cannot be uſed, as in a ſtrait. There are no more then foure facings intire, beſides Angular; as for Diviſionall, there be divers, and indeed very neceſſary many of them be, as occaſion may offer it ſelfe for their ſeverall uſes; howſoever peremptorily to ſay, there be ſo many and no more, I conceive, hath beene concluded by none; but it ſtill reſts at the diſcretion of the Commander, to exerciſe more or fewer of them, as he beſt liketh, and the neceſſity requireth either for action or exerciſe.

Intire facings are ſo called when the aſpect of the whole Company are directed one way. Intire.

Diviſionall facings are ſo called, when the aſpect of the Souldiers is at one & the ſame time directed divers and ſeverall waies: as to the front and reere, the right and left, or to all foure at once, &c. Diviſionall.

Angular. Angular facings are so called, when the aspect of the Company is directed to the right corner man, which is the right Angle, or to the left corner man, which is the left Angle; or to the foure corner men, which are the foure Angles.

Angular facings were of great use among the ancients, for their figures called the Diamond, the wedge, the Sheeres, the Saw, and such like, when they made use of such formes of battell. But for the use of them in our moderne Discipline, I conceive there is little or none, onely thus, wee honour the memory of the Ancients in their use. And some say they are very fit for exercise; for that by their use the souldier is made more apt and perfect in the other. Therefore let this suffice to be spoken concerning facings, and now be pleased to turne your aspect, and take a view how our young souldiers will behave themselves, in the performance of the doublings.

Chap. XI.

Of Doublings, their use and parts.

Doublings are of most excellent and singular good use for the strengthening of any part of the battell, according to the occasion or discretion of the Commander, and consists of these two generals, Doublings of length, and Doublings of depth, all times in quantity,

tity of number, ſometimes both in number and place, both ſorts having this reſtriction, to be doublings of rankes or flanks; every particular doublings pointing at one of theſe, although there be ſundry and divers waies for the doing of them, each of them being to very good purpoſe, for ſome conſideration or other. Doublings of Ranks, from what forme ſoever it be done, doth make the number double ſo much as was before, and ſometimes doth extend the length of the battell to double the proportion of ground, as well as number.

Doublings of files (or flankes) doe alſo double the number in depth, and ſometimes becomes a doubling both of number and place. Wherefore for the better underſtanding of the doublings, obſerve with me theſe ſixe uſuall waies following.

The ſeverall parts or branches of Doublings.

Doublings of
1 Ranks.
2 Halfe-files.
3 Bringers-up.
4 The Reere.
5 Files.
6 Halfe-rankes.

The firſt is the doubling of rankes, and is when every even ranke doubleth into the odde; the ſecond is, when the halfe-files double their ranks forwards into the Front: the third, when the Bringers-up double their ranks forwards into the Front. The fourth when the Front-halfe files doubleth

bleth the Reere. Theſe firſt foure being doublings of ranks, the length of the battell being by them extended either ſimply in number, or both in number and place. The next two are doublings of flanks: the firſt whereof is the ordinary doublings of files, every one of the even files being inſerted into the odde files, accounting from the hand named. The next is the doubling of halfe-rankes, which is to be underſtood when one flanke doubleth the other, either by paſſing through, countermarch, doubling intire, or diviſionall.

You are to note in this motion of doubling, that as there is one part of the body ſtands, ſo the other part moves: the ſtanding part is to be doubled, the part moving, are thoſe that double, as you may perceive by the figures, which ſhew the manner of each doubling. That which next followes are the words of command, and direction for doublings with their ſeverall reducements following next after them.

The diſtance for particular and diviſionall doublings, is open order in Ranke and File.

Note that the ordinary doublings of Rankes and Files, is or ought to be performed by three ſteps, firſt ſtepping forth with that foot which is next unto the place named, and in the reducement, retreturne by the contrary hand.

The words of command for Doublings.

Ranks to the {right / left} double.

Rankes as you were.

Files to the {right / left} double.

Files as you were.

Bringers up double your ranks forward to the right.

Bringers up face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Bring-

Bringers up double your ranks forward to the left.

Bringers up face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Files to the right and left double { outward, inward, } Files as you were.

Halfe files double your rankes forward to the right.

Halfe files face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Halfe files double your ranks forward to the left.

Halfe files face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Front halfe files face about to the left { and double the reere to the right, march forth into your places.

Front halfe files face about to the right { and double the reere to the left, march forth into your places.

Front halfe-files double the reere to the right by counter-march.

Front halfe-files face about to the left; march forth into your places.

Front halfe-files double the reere to the left by counter-march.

Front halfe-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Halfe-rankes to the right by counter-march, double your left flanke.

Note that in the doublings of ranks and files, if you double rankes to either hand, doubling of files to the contrary, reduceth them. Or in doubling of files to any hand, doubling of ranks to the contrary will reduce them.

Halfe-rankes that doubled face to the right, march forth into your places.

Halfe-rankes to the left by counter-march, double your right flanke.

Halfe ranks that doubled face to the left, march forth into your places.

Halfe-ranks of the right, double your left flank.

Halfe-ranks that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.

Halfe-ranks of the left, double your right flank.

Halfe-ranks that doubled face to the left, march forth into your right places.

Note that upon all motions of doublings, that they that are to double before they move from their places, are to advance their Armes. When they have performed their doubling, they are to conforme to the Posture of those whom they double, whether it be Order, Advance, or Shoulder.

Halfe-files double your front to the right intire.

Halfe-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Halfe-files double your front to the left intire.

Halfe-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Halfe-files double your front inward intire.

Halfe-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Halfe-files double your front by diuision.

Halfe-files face about to the right and left, march forth into your places.

Front halfe-files double your reere by diuision.

Front halfe-files face about to the right and left inward, march forth into your places.

Front halfe-files double your reere to the right intire.

Front halfe-files face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Front halfe-files double your reer to the left intire.

Front halfe-files face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Halfe-ranks of the right, double your left flank intire to the right.

Halfe-rankes that doubled, face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Halfe-ranks of the left, double your right flanke intire to the left:

Halfe-ranks that doubled, face about to the right, march into your places.

Halfe-ranks of the right, double your left flanke by diuision.

Halfe-rankes that doubled, face about the right and left inward, march forth into your places.

Double your ranks to the right intire.

Ranks that doubled face to the left, march forth into your places.

Double your ranks to the left intire.

Ranks that doubled face to the right, march forth into your places.

Note that all entire doublings, are to be performed at Order both in Ranke and File.

Double your ranks by diuision.

Ranks that doubled, face to the right and left inward, march forth into your places.

Double your files to the right intire, advancing.

Files that doubled, face about to the left, march forth into your places.

Double your files to the left intire, advancing.

Files that doubled, face about to the right, march forth into your places.

Files double your { right / left } depth intire to the { right / left } files that doubled, as you were.

Files double your depth to the right, every man

falling behinde his bringer-up.
Files that doubled, as you were.

Chap. XII.

Of inversion and conversion, and of doubling Ranks.

There is yet another doubling of the depth, which is called Inversion. But because some out of their ignorance make little or no difference betwixt Inversion and conversion. Give me leave for the clearing of the doubt, to place Conversion and Inversion together, that by their contrary effects, the difference may be the more perspicuous to such as shall be desirous to know it. Yet before I either enter upon figure, or command for Inversion or Conversion, I hold it necessary to shew some of the figures of those doublings, for which I have already given the words of command and reducements. And then next after them, I will place both the words of Command, and the figures belonging to Inversion and Conversion.

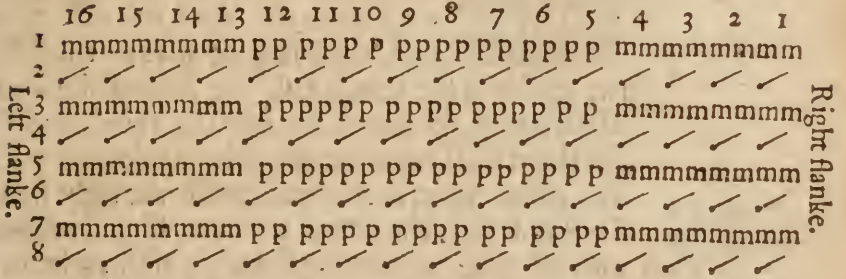
This figure next following, is a doubling of rankes to the right, where you may perceive how the even rankes are inserted into the odde rankes: the pricks denotating the places they stood in, before the doubling began, the little line or stroke drawne from the pricks, shewing the manner of the

the doubling: I thinke it would be needleſſe to make another figure, to ſhew the doubling of rankes to the left; for the meaneſt judgement may by this figure eaſily apprehend what the other would be.

Note that in the doubling of Ranks, the even Ranks are to double into the odde, beginning alwaies to reckon from the firſt Rank.

Rankes to the right double.

Front.


16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
1 mmmmmmmm pp ppp p pppppp ppppp mmmmmmmm
2
3 mmmmmmmm ppppppp pppp ppppp pp mmmmmmmm
4
5 mmmmmmmm ppppppp pp pp pppppp mmmmmmmm
6
7 mmmmmmmm pp ppp p pppp pp pp ppp mmmmmmmm
8
Left flanke.
Right flanke.

Reere.

Rankes as you were.

Chap.

Chap. XIII.

Of doublings of Files.

IN this doubling of Files, you may perceive, that each of the even files doubleth into the odde files, beginning from the hand named: as in this doubling of files to the left; the left hand file ſtands faſt, the ſecond file doubleth into it, the fourth file into the third, and ſo for the reſt. If your command be to double your files to the right, then contrariwiſe the right hand file ſtands faſt, the reſt of the even files doubling into the odde, accounting from the right, as before from the left. Thus much may ſuffice for the doubling of files, onely take this by way of admonition; that as in doubling of ranks any way, you are to obſerve your right hand leader: ſo in doubling of files, you are to obſerve your file-leader; ſo that as neere as poſſibly may be, you may either in ranke or file, be altogether in one motion. If you pleaſe further to obſerve with me, that this doubling is a doubling of number, and not of place, the depth of the battell not being thereby extended, for further ſatisfaction obſerve this figure.

In doubling of Files, note if the doubling be to the left, as in this Figure, then every man of the even Files, ſteps behinde his left hand

Files

Files to the left, double.

Front.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	
1	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
2	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
3	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
4	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
5	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
6	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
7	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		
8	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	p	/	m	/	m	/	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m		

Left Flanke. Right Flanke.

Reere.

* *Files as you were.*

man at three steps, every even File doubling into the odde files beginning your account with the outmost File to the hand named, as I have formerly said.

* In this doubling of Ranks by Bringers-up, as likewise in all other of like nature, they that are to move, are to advance their Armes. But if the Commander please, it will be best for the ease of the Musket tiers, to be shouldered. And upon all doubling of Ranks whatsoever, let them be sure to observe their right hand men.

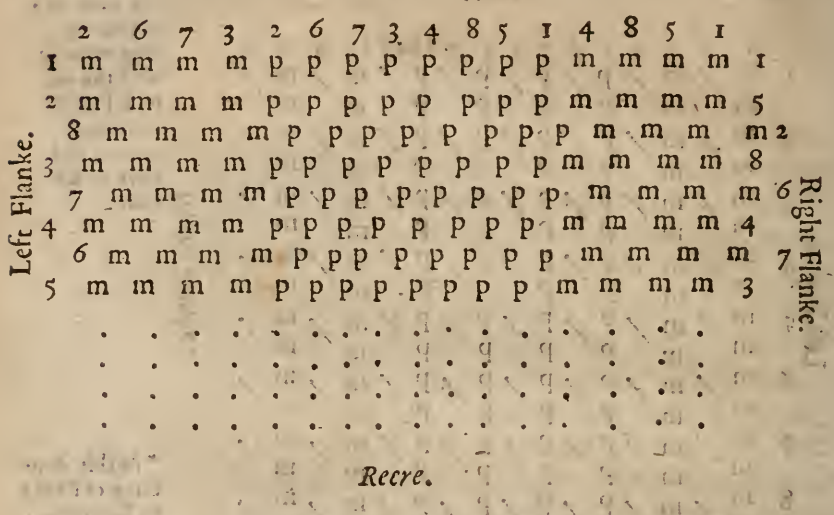
Chap. XIV.

Of doublings by bringers-up.

THis doubling which next followeth, shall be a doubling by Bringers-up, of which sort, one figure will be sufficient, which I hold most necessary to demonstrate in manner of motion, The figure followeth. *Bring-*

Bringers up double your Rankes forward to the right.

Front.


2 6 7 3 2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1 4 8 5 1
1 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 1
2 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 5
8 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 2
3 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 8
7 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 6
4 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 4
6 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 7
5 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 3
Left Flanke.
Right Flanke.

Recre.

Bringers up face about to the left, march forth into your places.

This doubling of Ranks by Bringers up, differeth from the other doubling of ranks, first done, both in quantity and quality. In quantity it differeth, in regard the other leaves a large distance betweene Ranke and Ranke, being double the distance they formerly stood at: this contrariwise continuing and preserving the same distance they formerly stood at betweene each Ranke. In quality it also differeth, in regard that it brings the best and second sort of Souldiers, together into the Front. The manner of this doubling you may plainely

plainely perceive by the figure, where it is performed as followeth. The eight or laſt ranke, which are the bringers up, paſſe forwards even in ranke, through or betweene the intervales, to the right of them that ſtand before them, until they come even in ranke with the Front; The ſeventh rank following thoſe which marched from behinde them, placing themſelves in the ſecond Rank, the ſixth in the third, the fifth ranke or halfe file in the fourth or reere of the front halfe file. This doubling maketh a very able Front, in bringing all the beſt Souldiers together. And although it hath diminiſhed the number, in regard of the depth, yet it hath doubled the number in the length. This doubling is in quantity of number, not of ground. When you march into your places, remember this, that the Rank which laſt tooke his place in the execution of this motion, muſt firſt march into his place in the way of reducement. For as they are led forth by their Bringers up, contrariwiſe they are led off by their halfe file leaders.

In the doubling of the Front to the left by Bringers up, it is the ſame, onely differing in this, that whereas before it was to the Right, this is to the Left. Wherefore let this ſuffice for doublings by Bringers up.

CHAP.

Chap. XV.

Doublings of Files outward and inward.

He next doubling, is a doubling of Files outward, which workes the same effect; as to double Files to the right and left. For the right flanke is to double to the right, the left flanke to the left. As you may plainely perceive by the following Figure.

Files to the right and left double outward.

Front.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1
1	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
2	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
3	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
4	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
5	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
6	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
7	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m
8	m	/	m	/	p	/	p	/	\	p	\	p	\	m	\	m
	m		m		p		p			p		p		m		m

Left Flanke. Right Flanke.

Reere.

Files as you were.

This

This doubling of Files to the right and left outward, ſtrengthneth both the Flanks at once; by doubling their numbers in depth: But it weakneth the Inward part, where it taketh two Files cleane away, leaving a large Interuale in the midſt. Some ſay it is good when a Commander will grace any, to bring them through the center or midſt of the Battalia. But you muſt note, if you have an odde File you cannot ſo punctually performe it, as when the number of your Files be even. The manner of the doubling, you may perceive by the Figure; The motion, by the little lines drawen from the Pricks. The performance is as followeth.

The outmoſt File of each Flanke ſtands; The ſecond Files double into them; The third File from each Flanke ſtands; The fourth File double into the third; The ſixt into the fift, and ſo likewiſe for the reſt.

If you would double Files to the right and left inward, it is to be done the contrary way: For whereas in this Figure of doubling laſt performed; the outmoſt Files ſtand, the other doubling outward into them: Contrarywiſe the two inmoſt Files ſhould ſtand, the reſt doubling to them inward. And whereas in this there is a larger diſtance in the midſt, then is in any other part; The other part Contra would bee cloſeſt in that part. Some men doe not approove of either of theſe doublings. I leave every man to his owne choice. The practiſe of it makes perfection, and he that can doe much may doe leſſe when he liſteth.

CHAP.

Chap. XVI.
Of doubling by Halfe-files.

He next doubling is a doubling by Halfe-files, whereby the length of the Battaile is extended to double the former proportion of number, the depth being extenuated both in number and place. This Figure will demonstrate unto you the manner of the motion, which is as followeth.

Halfe-files double your Rankes forward to the right.

Front.

2 6 7 3 2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1 4 8 5 1
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 1
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 5
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 2
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 6
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 3
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 7
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 4
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 8

Left Flanke. *Right Flanke.*

Reere.

Halfe-files face about to the left, March foorth into your places.

This

This doubling our Rankes forward by our Halfe-files, is a Motiõ generally approved of by all for serviceable, if it be done with conveniencie. It differeth from the other doubling by Bringers up, in quality, not in quantity, (for therein they keepe one proportion:) In quality it differeth thus: The doubling by Bringers up brought the best and second sort of souldiers together into the Front; The fourth and third sort into the Reere: So that the Reere was $\frac{2}{7}$ worse then the Front: This doubling by Halfe-files brings the best and the third together into the Front, and leaves the second and fourth in the Reere: So that the Front is made more able, then the Reere, by $\frac{1}{7}$. It differeth likewise in Motion thus; For whereas in the other doubling, by Bringers up, the Motion was begun, by the last Ranke, every Ranke following the Ranke which came from behind him: This contrarywise is directly led foorth by the fift Ranke from the Front, (if they be but eight deepe) and so is executed more surely and suddenly; the fift Ranke passing into the first; the sixth Ranke into the second; the seventh into the third, and so for the rest. For the reducement, when they are commanded to face about to the left, and march forth into their places; Then as the Motion was led on by the Halfe-file-leaders, so in the reducement, they are led off by the Bringers up: Doubling of halfe-files to the left produceth the same effect; onely the contrary hand.

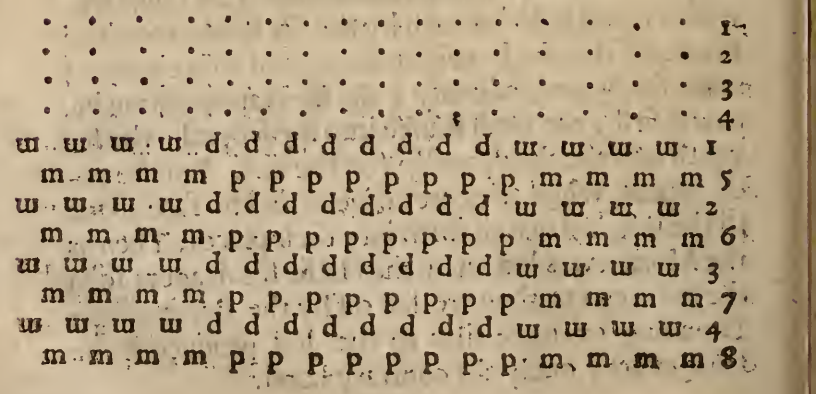
Chap. XVII.

Of doubling the Reere by Front Halfe-files.

THe doubling of the Reere by Front halfe-files, is differing from the doubling laſt ſhewen, more in maner then matter; Both concurring in ſubſtance, although differing in circumſtance. To ſay more of it, were more then needed; only peruſe the Figure which preſents it ſelfe unto you (as it is in motion) as followeth.

Front halfe-files, Face about to the Left; and double your Reere to the Right.

Firſt Front.


1
2
3
4
w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 1
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 5
w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 2
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 6
w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 3
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 7
w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 4
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 8

Reere.

Front Halfe-files face about to the Left, march forth into your places.

This

This doubling of the Reere, by the Front halfe-files, is to bee performed after this manner. The command being first given, the Front halfe-files face about to the left, (the Pikes being all aduanced, the Muskets all either poysed or shouldred) and so being led by the Halfe-file-leaders to the Reere, which are those that hold the fourth place of honour, they march directly forwards to the Right of the other part of the Body, which stood faced in opposition; untill the leaders of the doubling have ranked, even in Ranke with the Bringers up, the rest ranking even with the other standing Rankes, according to their places: If it be for service that this doubling is used, then the whole body is to face about to the Reere, being the part to be doubled: If onely for exercise, then the Commander may (if he please) keepe his place, and the doubling being performed, and the whole Body faced to the Leader, command for the reducement; Files to the Right, double intire advancing; every man falling before his leader; which reduceth each man to his first place.

Chap. XVIII.

Of doubling the Reere by Countermarch.

THere is another manner, of doubling of the Reere, by the Front halfe-files, contrary to that shewen in the precedent Chapter, which is done by the way of the Lacedemon Countermarch; which some would ranke amongst the Countermarches. Because (say they) the Motion is a Countermarch. But the act intended, or thing wrought, is a doubling; and if it were, to have the denomination of a Countermarch, then it ought not to mixe with any other part of the Body, onely to Countermarch the Front into the midst, and there to stand, without passing forwards to the Reere; (which makes it a doubling) and then it might be accounted for a part-Countermarch. But as it is here commanded, and performed, it is a doubling. Obserue the Figure following.

A part Countermarch is when one Moity, or part of the Body countermarcheth, thereby, not altering the number of the length, or depth of the Figure; but onely transferring one part into another.

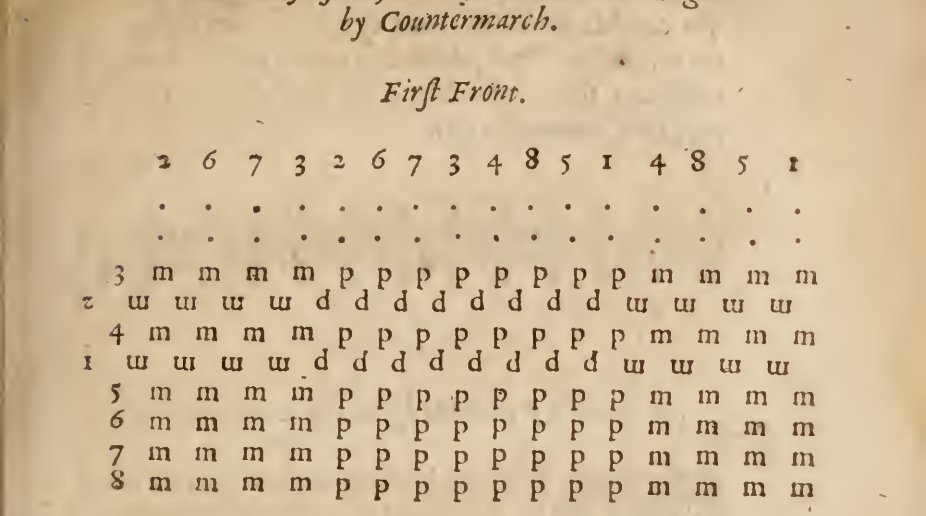
Note that if the Reere be doubled to the Right, the Countermarch must be to the Left: if the doubling be to the Left, the Countermarch must be to the Right.

It is at the discretion of the Commander, to face the Company, which way he pleaseth, either for Motion, or Reducement of any Motion formerly performed.

Front-

Front halfe-files, double your Reere to the Right by Countermarch.

First Front.


2 6 7 3 2 6 7 3 4 8 5 1 4 8 5 1
3 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
2 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w
4 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
1 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w
5 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
6 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
7 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
8 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m

Reere.

Front Halfe-files, face about to the Left, march forth into your places

This Figure of doubling the Reere by Countermarch, produceth the same effect to the Reere, as doubling the Front by Bringers up doth unto the Front. The Countermarch by which it is performed, is a Countermarch of losse of ground, We will speake more of it amongst the Countermarches. The command to reduce it is (if the Commander stand, at the head of that part that is doubled.) Front halfe-files, face about to the Right, march forth into your places: If he keepe his first stand, having faced them to him; Then,

Front halfe-files, march forth into your places. To double the Reere to the Left, by Countermarch, is the ſame, differing onely in the hand. I will next ſhew a doubling of the left Flanke, by way of Countermarch.

Chap. XIX.

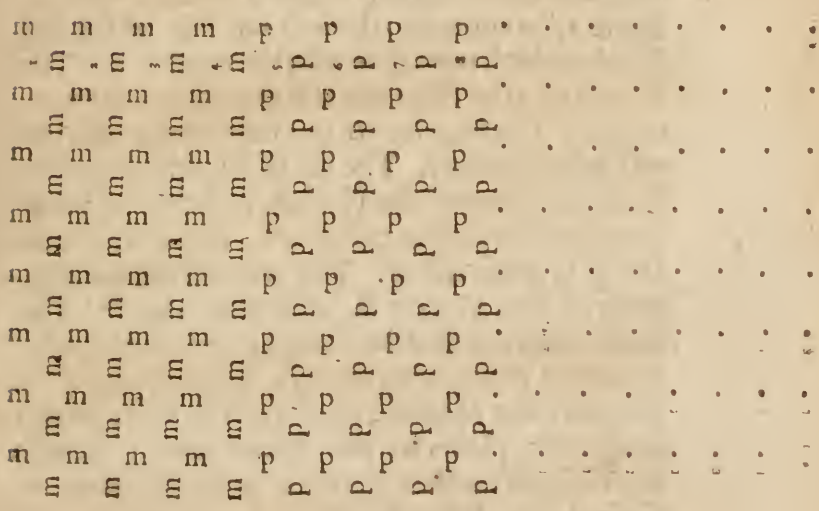
Of Doubling Flankes by way of Countermarch.

HAlfe-rankes (or flankes) are then ſaid to be doubled, when the depth of your Battalia, is increaſed to double, their former proportion; of Number, or Place, or both: which may be done divers wayes. But this Chapter, and Figure, is onely to demonſtrate unto you, the doubling of the left Flanke, by way of Countermarch. The Figure followeth: and ſtands as the doubling is in Motion.

Halfe-files

Halfe-rankes to the Right by Countermarch, double your left flanke.

Front.



Reere.

Halfe-rankes that doubled, face to the Right. March foorth into your places.

This doubling of Halfe-rankes by Countermarch, is a doubling of Number, not of Place: for the depth ſtill retaines, the ſame proportion; onely augmented by one man, the length of your Battalia, being diminiſhed, both in Number and Place; The right Flanke being wholly inſerted, into the left Flanke, as you may perceive by the

Figure; The Motion is to be performed on this manner: The halfe-rankes of the Right, Face to the Right, and then Even in ranke together, Countermarch betweene the Intervales, untill the outmost file to the Right, which is marked with the figure 1, be come into the outmost File of the left Flanke, which is marked with the number 16: The second into the fifteenth; the third into the foureteenth; The fourth into the thirteenth: and the rest in like manner. The use of this doubling is, to strengthen one of the Flankes, by bringing more hands, to doe present execution; the other Flanke being in more surety. The way for the Reducement of this Motion is, after this manner; The halfe-ranks last doubled, being faced to the Right, then they which were the last, which tooke their places in the Motion, now are the first, which take their places in the Reducement; orderly marching in Ranke together, untill they come to their places: Then facing to their Leader, they become Files againe. The left flanke may in like manner, double the Right by Countermarch; The difference is this: The right Flanke stands, the left Flanke is inserted into the Right, as before the Right was into the Left. To shew another Figure for it, would be altogether needlesse.

CHAP.

Chap. XX.

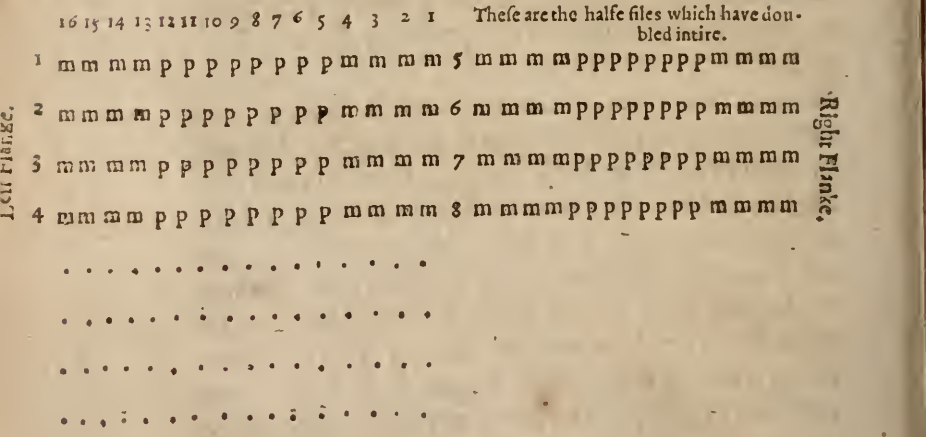
Doubling halfe files to the right intire to accomodate the doubling of halfe Rankes.

I Should now come to ſhew another manner of doubling of flanks, by inſerting the one flanke into the other, a different way from that laſt ſhewen. But if I ſhould performe it, as the body ſtands, in the ordinary ſquare, flanked with Muskettiers: then it would produce a mixture of Armes. To avoid which, before you enter upon this doubling, of paſſing in, through or betweene your halfe rankes; Cauſe your halfe files to double the Front to the right intire, which being performed, you may then proceed to the doubling of your flanks, any way without mixture of Armes. If I ſhould have ſhewen this motion with Pikes or Muskettiers alone, this firſt doubling of halfe files intire, might have beene ſpared: but I deſire not to leave any thing obſcure or difficult, but to render it as eaſie and apparant as I may, to the capacity of the meaneſt reader: and if any place in this ſmall Treatiſe of mine ſhall ſeem ambiguous, I ſhall intreate the courteous to impute it to my lacke of language to expreſſe my ſelfe, rather than any will in me to conceale, or obnubi-

obnubilate the sense, whereby to deprive them of the true meaning of any thing in this Booke contained. But left by doubling of words, I prove tardy in my worke; I will forbeare further circumstance, and come to the prosecution of the matter: which in the first place, will be a doubling of halfe files to the right intire, whereby the next doubling may be the more commodiously accomplished. The figure followeth.

Halfe files, double your front to the right intire.

Front.



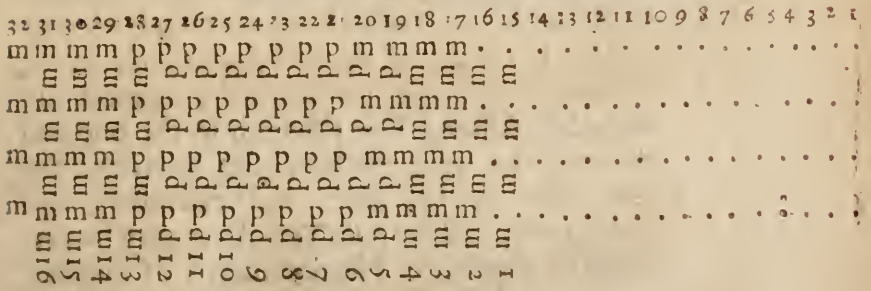
Reere.

This doubling of halfe files to the right intire, I have fully expresst in the figure, as the body stands, the motion being ended: because we are to adde another doubling, before wee reduce them. This figure next following, will be best shewen in the

the motion or action, not fully performed: that thereby the manner may be the more easily discerned. But by the way observe, that this doubling of halfe files, is a doubling both of number and place; for the length of the Battalia is not only double so many a breast as they were before, but they also have extended ther length to double their proportion of ground, which formerly they did occupie. I forbeare to speake more of this doubling, untill we come to shew it in motion: and now proceed to the next doubling upon this. The command is as followeth.

Halfe rankes of the right, double your left flanke.

Front.



Reere.

Halfe rankes that doubled, face to the right, march forth into your places.

This

This doubling of halfe rankes is a more speedy and sure doubling, then the doubling of halfe ranks by countermarch, but is most commonly used when the body consists but of one sort of Armes, being either all Musketiers, or all Pikes. But because in my figures I have as well Musketiers as Pikes, I have made use of a Doubling in tire, and from that have doubled my left flanke, to prevent the mixture of Armes: However mixture of Armes upon some occasion may be necessary. The manner to performe the motion, is this. The left flanke stands, the halfe ranks of the right, face to the left; and then the inmost file of the right flanke, (all the files of the right flanke, being by this facing become ranks) is the leader of this motion, marching forth right to their left hands, between the intervales of the rankes of the left flank, untill that the sixteenth file which now is become a ranke, have placed themselves orderly in the two and thirtieth file, (which is the outmost file of the left flanke.) The fifteenth in the one and thirtieth, the fourteenth in the thirtieth: the thirteenth in the nine and twentieth; and so likewise of all the rest. The places may be perceived by the figure. The doubling is of number, and not of place. For reducement to both these doublings, first cause the halfe rankes which last doubled, to face to the right, and so to march into their places. They that last tooke their places in the motion, are the first that take their places in the reducement. The doubling of halfe ranks being thus reduced, next for the reducing of the halfe files,

files, (which were doubled before, for the accomodating of the doubling of halfe-ranks) command the halfe files to face about to the left, and to march forth into their places: Wherewith I will conclude these sort of doublings, which require open order in Ranke and File, and come next to shew intire doublings, which claime a closer distance for their true performance. And therfore conceive them closed to their order, both in Ranke and File.

Order in Ranke and File. The distance required for intire Doubling.

Chap. XXI.

The difference betweene intire and divisionall doublings, and of doubling halfe-files intire.

Having closed our Souldiers to their due distance, I will next proceed, to shew doublings intire. But me thinkes, I heare some already inquiring, what is meant, by intire doublings; and therefore without offence to the curious, give me leave to be so courteous (to the Ignorant) to tell them, that all Doublings, are either intire or divisionall. Intire Doublings being these, or such like, as when the files or halfe-files, rankes, or halfe-rankes, (according as the command may be) doe march forth joyntly together, without division or dissipation, to double the part commanded.

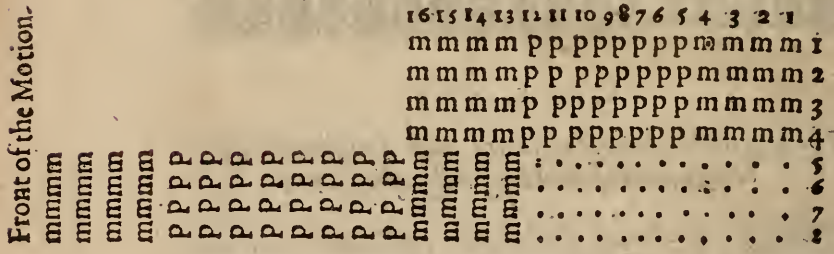
What intire Doublings are.

What is meant by Particle, and dividuall Doublings.

manded. Particle and divisionall Doublings being such, as I have formerly shewn; as when the files or halfe-files, rankes or halfe-rankes, are disranked and divided into more parts or places than one. This may serve for way of distinction: I will now shew intire doublings, as they are in action: and first beginne with doubling halfe-files. The Figure followeth.

Halfe-files double your front to the left intire.

Front.



Reere.

Halfe-files, face about to the right, march forth into your places.

This doubling of halfe-files intire, hath beene held a better doubling; then either the ordinary doubling of Ranks, or the usuall way of doubling by halfe-files or Bringers up: some of the causes are these. First it makes no disturbance to the other part of the Battalia; but that it may either be executed in time of motion, exercise, or skirmish. Secondly, it appeares another solid body, to the great

great disheartening of any enemy. Thirdly, it is very apt for over-fronting; being a doubling both of number and place. The way to performe the motion, is this. The halfe-files face to the left, and march till they are quite cleere of that part of the body, which stands; then they face to their Leader, and so march up, untill they are become even in ranke with those which stand upon the right flanke: and then the Figure will be perfect. For the reducement; the word of command is, *Halfe Files face about to the right, march forth into your places:* having faced about, they march straight forth, untill they be cleere of the front halfe-files; then they face to the left, and march straight forth, untill every man hath his right place, and then face right after their Leaders. The doubling of halfe-files to the right intire, is performed after the same manner, onely differing in the hand.

Chap. XXII.

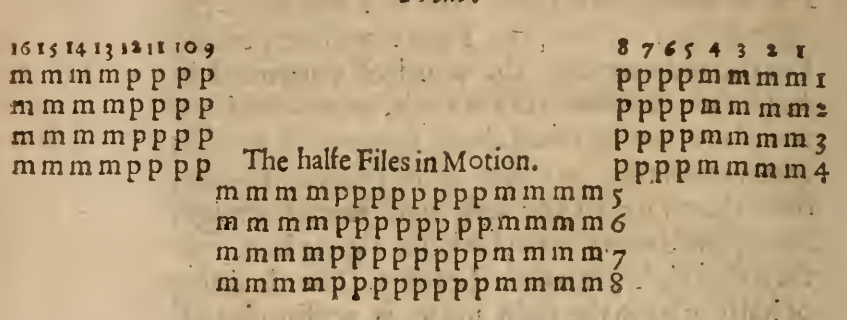
Of doubling the Front inward intire.

Doubling of the Front inward intire, hath beene a doubling as usefull, as ancient: notwithstanding, most commonly used by greater bodies, as when one Regiment, Division, or Maniple, moveth forward, betweene two others, thereby seconding or relieving them: whereby the Front of all the three divisions become

become ranged in an even line; but I have onely taken upon me, to shew the motion, in a private Company. The Figure whereof followeth, as it is in the execution.

Halfe-Files, double your Front inward intire.

Front.



Reere.

Halfe-files, face about, and march. Front halfe-files, close your division. Face all to your Leader.

It hath beene the custome amongst ancient Souldiers and great Commanders, that in the matter of Exercise, they shew some things which are most apt for a private Company; some for a Regiment; other some most usefull for compleat arms; so in like manner, it must be the discretion of every Reader, (whether he reade for apprehension or reprehension) to suit and fit each motion to his true end & purpose, & with the wise man, *rather reade*

reade twiſe, than judge once: and then perhaps, when the intent of the Author is perceived, his opinions may be received; yet what need I, or any other apologize ought, in the behalfe of this Figure, or any other ſuch like: ſith they are but the expreſſions of the various figures which proceed of the words of command, uſed almoſt by every ordinary Exerciſer of a foot Company? Nevertheleſſe if *Æſops* long ear'd beaſt paſſing by, ſhould peepe into this Druggiſts ſhop, and quarrell with the Compounds, I ſhall not ſtudie for a further anſwer, then *That the excellent and skilfull Phyſitian, can convert that into an Antidote, which the unlearned foole will make his poyſon.* But leſt I be taxt for digreſſion, the motion of this doubling is thus performed. The halfe files of the Front, faceth to the right and left; and march till they have left a diſtance between them ſufficient to receive the halfe files of the Reere, and then ſtand and face to their Leader. Then the halfe files march up, and even their Front. For the reducement of this Figure, there are (as there are for all the reſt) divers waies. But becauſe that it is neceſſary to ſhew one, let the halfe files face about to the Reere, and march untill they are cleere of the Front halfe files, then ſtand and face to their Leader; then the other halfe files of the Front, cloſe their diviſion, and they are reduced.

Chap. XXIII.

Of hale-files, doubling the Front by diviſion.

THis doubling hath beene very well approved of by Count *Mansfield*, Sir *Thomas Kelly*, Captaine *Bingham*, and divers other ſouldiers of good eſteeme, who preferre theſe ſorts of doublings before any other: becauſe theſe doublings may be uſed in time of fight, without diſturbance to the other part of the Battell. The Figure ſtands as it is in motion.

Halfe-files, double your Front by Diviſion.

Front.

16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 1
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 2
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 3
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 4

halfe-files of the left flank.

m m m m p p p p . . . . . p p p p m m m m 5
m m m m p p p p . . . . . p p p p m m m m 6
m m m m p p p p . . . . . p p p p m m m m 7
m m m m p p p p . . . . . p p p p m m m m 8

halfe-files of the right flank.

Reere.

Halfe-files, face about inward. March forth into your places.

The

The way to performe this motion, is as followeth: the halfe-files are to face to the right and left, and to march, untill they are cleere of the Reere part of the Front diviſion; then they face to their Leader, and march up, untill they be come even in ranke, with the Front, and ſo ſtand: which perfects this doubling. The way to reduce them is, as followeth. The halfe-files are to face about to the Reere, and to march forth-right untill they are cleere of the Front halfe-files; and then they are to face to the right and left inward; and ſo to march and cloſe their diviſion; Then being faced to their Leader, they are reduced, as at firſt.

Chap. XXIV.

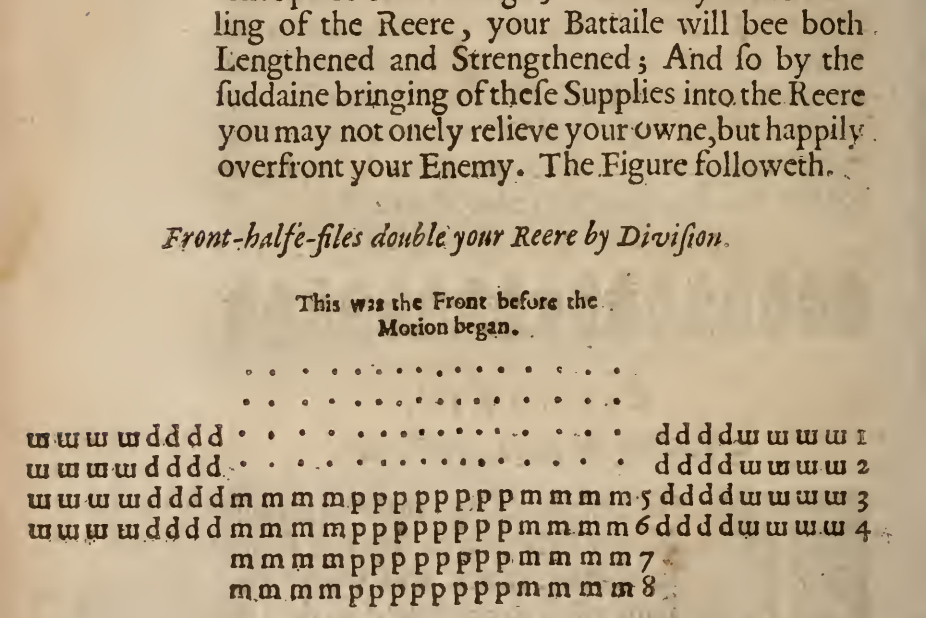
Of doubling the Reere, by Diviſion.

THis next doubling, ſhall be a doubling of the Reere by the Front halfe-files, which will worke the ſame effect to the Reere, as the laſt doubling, by diviſion, did to the Front. It may be uſefull in the paſſing of a River, when the enemy chargeth or perſueth in the reere. The Front-diviſion either opening, as you may perceive by the Figure (next following) and ſuffering the Reere halfe-files to paſſe through them, they maintaining the Skirmiſh, untill the

other have attained the further banke of the River; Or elſe the Front-halfe-files, being opened to the Right and Left, and Faced upon the Enemy; March gallantly Vp, and receive the Charge, whileſt the others provide for themſelves. This Motion may alſo be uſefull, when you have gained ſome place of aduantage, For then by this Doubling of the Reere, your Battaile will bee both Lengthened and Strengthened; And ſo by the ſuddaine bringing of theſe Supplies into the Reere you may not onely relieve your owne, but happily overfront your Enemy. The Figure followeth.

Front-halfe-files double your Reere by Diviſion.

This was the Front before the Motion began.



Reere.

Front-halfe-files, Face about to the Right and Left, inward. March forth into your places,

For

For the manner or way of this Motion, it may be thus performed: The Front halfe-files Face to the Right, and Left, and march untill they are cleere of the other halfe-files of the Reere; Then they Face to the Reere, and March on, untill they have attained to bee Even in Ranke with them, whom they had Command to Double; which perfects the Doubling. The way to Reduce them, is as followeth: If you keepe your place of the first Front, Then let your Halfe-files Face about, (according to former directions,) and March untill they are cleere of the Reere Halfe-files, which stand; Then Face to the Right and Left inward, and close their Divisions; And being Faced all to their Leader, they are Reduced. Sundry, and divers ways there are, for Reducement both of this and most other Figures. Neuertheleſſe I conceive, if I give one Reducement to each Figure, it may suffice to those that know little; As for such which know better, they know more wayes to the Wood then one: And surely, should I inlarge my selfe, but halfe so much as I might, (and indeed in some things, no more then were needfull) I should then bring my Volume into too great a Bulke, and by the price, hinder some of the profit: But I am willingly silent in some things, whereby others may be the better encouraged by my weaknesses, to take notice of their owne worths, which may induce them to put Pen to paper, and thereby produce some worthy worke, which may tend to their Credits, and their Countreys good.

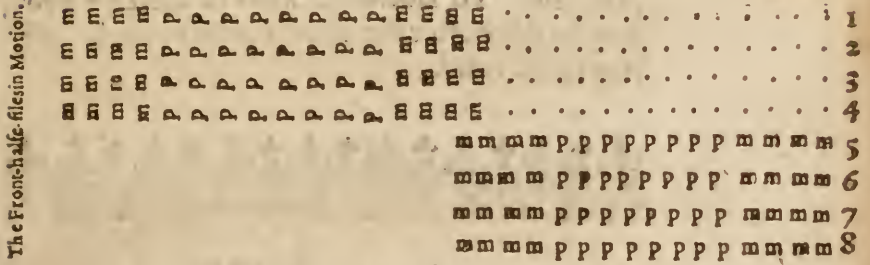
Chap. XXV.

Of Doubling the Reere intire, by the Front-halfe-files.

THis next *doubling*, shall be a *doubling* of the *Reere* to the *Right intire*, by the *Front halfe-files*; which I intend not fully to expresse: But to deliver the *Figure* as the *Body* stands in *Motion*. For I conceive it better to shew some *Figures* in the manner of the *Motion*, then to shew them as they would appeare. The *Motion* being perfected for the way of the working, gives a great deale more light to the Learner, then to shew the thing absolutely wrought. Neither would I have any thinke, although I shew these varieties of *Doublings*, and acknowledge them to be of singular good use for the extension of the Length or Depth of any *Battaile*; but that the wise conduct and skill of the Commander must so order them, that the *extending* of the Length, doe not too much *weaken* the Depth; nor that the *strengthening* of the Depth, be not too great a *weakening* to the *Front* or Length of your Battaile. I might give examples how divers great Cõmanders, either by good foresight, or ill oversight, have gained to themselues and their Countreys,

tryes, Honor and Victory, or losse and slavery. But others have beene very plentifull in examples of this nature, which makes me the more sparing: For my intent is not to write a History of the actions of others; but rather to shew to such as are not so skilfull, The *Postures*, *Motions*, and some few *Formes* or *Figures* of *Battaile*, with their severall *Reducements*. The *Figure* of this present *Doubling* followeth.

Front-halfe-files, double your Reere to the right intire.



Front-halfefiles, face about to the Left. March forth into your places.

The manner of this motion (or doubling) is thus to be performed. The *Front-halfe-files*, *Face* to the *Left*, and *March* untill they are cleere of the *Reere-halfe-files*: Then *Face* againe to the *Left* (which is the *Reere*) and *March* outright, untill they *Ranke even* with the *last ranke* of the *Reere-division*; which gives conclusion to the *Doubling*.

For the *reducement*. Let your *Front-halfe-files*, *Face about* to the *Left*, and *March* right foorth untill they are cleere of the *Reere-halfe-files*: Then *Face* them to the Right, and let them *March* into their places. Then if the Commander goe to his first *Front*, and *Face* them all to him; they are *reduced* as at first. To *double* the *Reere* to the *Left intire*, may be done after the same manner: onely differing in the hand.

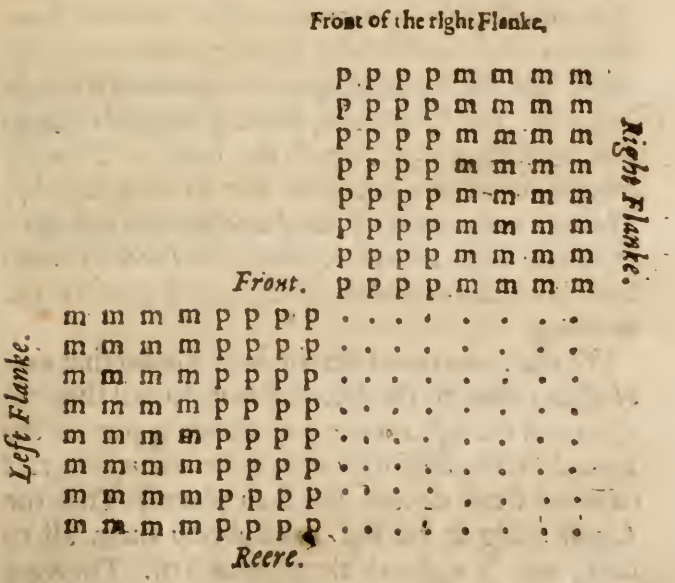
Chap. XXVI.

Of doublings by Halfe-rankes intire.

Having shewed the *Particle doublings* and the *Doublings* of *Front* and *Reere*, *intire*, and by *division*: I will next shew the *doublings* of *Flankes* after the same manner, and will first begin with a *doubling* of the *left Flanke*, by advancing the *right Flanke*, and placing it before

fore the Leaders of the *left Flanke*: which is a *doubling* both of Number and Place, and may ſerve to ſingular good uſe for the *ſtrengthening* of any *flank*, where it may be needfull: For it makes the *Battaile defenſible* on every part. The *Figure*, as it is in *Motion* followeth.

Halfe-rankes of the right, double your left flanke intire to the Right.



Halfe-rankes that doubled, face about to the left, March forth into your places.

If you would have your *Muskettiers*, to *double even*, with the *Muskettiers* of the *contrary Flanke*; Then it is no more but thus; cause the *halfe Ranks* of the *right Flanke*, to *march* forth-right (as you may perceive by the *Figure*) untill the *Reere Ranke* of the *right Flanke* be *advanced* about three *foot* before the *Front* of the *left Flanke*, and then cause that *Flanke* so *advanced*, to *Countermarch* their *Rankes* to the *right*. And then all your *Muskettiers* will be together, and the *Pikes* likewise by themselves. The *Reducement* wil be after the same manner. But for instruction for the *Motion*, by this *figure* intended according to the *command* formerly given. The *left Flanke*, *stands*; the *right Flanke* *marcheth* forth right, untill the *Reere* of the *right Flanke* be *advanced* before the *Front* of the *left Flanke*, as aforesaid: Then *face* them to the *left*; and cause them to *march*, untill the *Pikes* are *even* in *Ranke* with the *Muskettiers*, which perfects the *doubling*.

For the *Reducement*: let the *halfe Rankes* that *doubled*, *face about* to the *left*: and *march*, until they are cleere of the *left Flanke* (or standing part of the *Battaile*) then cause them to *face* to the *right*; and to *march* strait downe into their places. Then the *Leader* being at his *first Front faceth* them all to him, which *reduceth* them as at first. The *right Flanke* may also *double* the *left Flanke*, to the *left intire*: And then as the *right Flank* in this *doubling*, came *crosse* the *Front* of the *left*: contrariwise they will come *crosse* the *Reere*. The *left Flanke* may double the *right Flanke* intire; to either *hand* in like

like manner. But by this that hath already been ſhown, the others may be underſtood. Wherefore I ſpare the *Figures*.

Chap. XXVII.

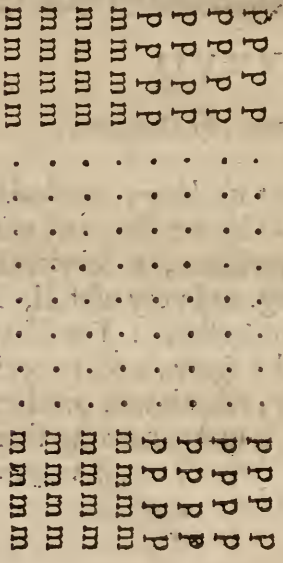
Of doubling of Flankes, by Diviſion.

THis next *doubling*, is a *doubling* of *flanks* by *diviſion*, and without queſtion, a ſerviceable *doubling*, and very uſefull, for ſome occaſions: For if you note the *figure*, and conceive rightly, what it will produce, (the *motion* being ended) it makes a ſtrong forme of battaile, to give fire three ſeverall wayes at once. The figure followeth.

Half-

Half-ranks of the left, double your Right Flanke by Division.

This was the Front of the left Flanke.



Half-ranks that doubled, face about inward. March forth into your places.

The *motion* of this *doubling*, is thus to be performed. The *Reere-half-files* of the *left Flanke*, face about to the *right*: and then both the *front, half-files*, and *Reere-half-files*, march forth-right; untill they are cleere of that part of the *body*, that *stands*: Then each *division*, faceth that way, which they are to

double,

double, (which the *Front half-files* muſt doe to the right, the *Reere half-files,* to the *left.*) And ſo *march* forth-right, untill the *doubling* be performed. For the *Reducement*; you are to conceive, it may bee diverſly performed: If the *Leader,* be at the *right flanke,* (which is the part that was *doubled.*) Then, the *Reducement* is, as followeth: The *half-rankes* that doubled, *face about, inward*; and *march* forth-right untill they are cleere of the *right flank,* which *ſtands*; Then, the *Front half-files, face* to the *left*: the *Reere-half-files* to the *right,* and then *cloſe* their *diviſion.* The *Leader* going to his *firſt front,* and *facing* the *whole body* to him, they are *reduced* as at firſt: If that the *right flanke,* would *double* the left Flanke, by *diviſion*; The matter is the ſame: differing onely in the *hand.*

Chap. XXVIII.

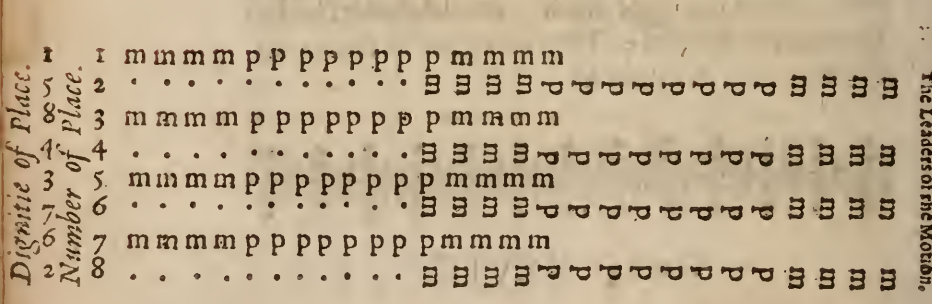
Of doubling Rankes intire.

Doubling of ranks to the right intire, is a doubling, both of number, and place: and in ſome ſort, worketh the ſame effect; as the doubling of half-files to the right intire. But differeth firſt in regard of the *parties*; which are the *doublers,* and ſecondly, in the *diſtance,* left after

ter the *doubling*. For the *first*, (which is matter of *dignitie*.) The *fift* and *first* in honour, are *ranked* together in the *front*; the *second*, and *sixt* in dignity, make the *last ranke* in the *Reere*: So that the *Front*, precedes the *Reere*, $\frac{1}{7}$ in worth: whereas, in the *doubling* by *half-files*, the *Front* exceeded the *Reere*, by $\frac{1}{4}$: Secondly, it differeth for the *distance*; by leaving *open order*, at the *left*, betweene all the *ranks*. For further satisfaction, obserue this *figure* following.

Double your Ranks to the right intire.

Front.



Reere.

Ranks that doubled, face to the left. March forth into your places.

The *motion* of this *doubling*, ought to be performed, as followeth, namely, if the *doubling* be to the *right*, as is above expressed by this *figure*: Every *even ranke*, *faceth* to the *right*. The *right hand man* of each *ranke*, becomming the *leader* of his *ranke file-wise*: *leading* them forth, and in their *march* or *moving* forwards, a little bending to the *left*:

left: that when the *left hand man* of each ranke, (which are the *bringers-up* of the *motion*) are cleere of the *ſtanding* part of the *body*, by onely *facing* to the *front*, they may ſtand *even* in *ranke*, with the reſt of the *company*.

For *reducement* of this *doubling:* it may be as followeth. Command the ranks that *doubled*, to *face* to the left; and march forth-right into their places. Or for variety, command *halfe-ranks* of the *right*, to *face* to the *left*, and *double* the *left flanke*. Both which, as the *company* now ſtand, worke one and the ſame effect. The *left hand men* of each *ranke*, being the *leaders* of the *motion*, in the *reducement*. To *double rankes* to the *left intire*; is to be done after the ſame manner; onely obſerving the *difference* of the *hand*. This *doubling*, may alſo be done by *diviſion*. But I ſpare the figures.

Note, that the *left-hand men* are the *Leaders* of the *motion*, in the *reducement*.

Chap. XXIX.

Of doubling Files intire, advancing.

Doubling of *files* to the *right intire*, advancing, is (alſo) a *doubling* both of *number* and *place*: for it increaſeth the *depth*, to *double* their *former proportion*: of number, as from *eight*, to *ſixteene*; from *ten* to *twenty*, &c.

It alſo gaineth ſo much more *ground* before the *front*, as formerly the *Battell* did containe: by *tranſ-*

transferring the *even files* of the *body*, into the *ground*, before the *front* of the *odde files*: but this *doubling*, *diminisheth* the *number* of the *length* of your *battell*, although it preserves their *place*. I spare to speake further of it, onely thus. Let the antiquity of this *doubling*, plead for it's excellencie, and if that may hold for a rule, then this may be ranked amongst the best. For further directions, observe the following Figure.

Double your Files to the right intire, advancing.

Front.

	16	14	12	10	8	6	4	2	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	
Left Flanke.	16 m	14 m	12 p	10 p	8 p	6 p	4 m	2 m	1 *Right Flanke.*
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	2
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	3
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	4
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	5
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	6
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	7
	m	m	p	p	p	p	m	m	8

Reere.

Files that doubled, face about to the left. March forth into your places.

The

The *motion* of this *doubling*, ought to be performed after this manner. The *odde files* are to *ſtand*; beginning your account from the *outmoſt file*, to the *hand* named. The *Muſketiers*, and *Pikes*, of the *even files*, are to *advance* their Armes, and follow their *file-leaders*; every *file-leader leading* his *file* forth right; before his *next file* to the right, untill the *bringers up* of the *even files* are orderly placed, before the *leaders* of the *odde files*: as you may perceive by the Figure. For *reducement*: let the *files* that *doubled*, *face* about to *the left*: the *bringers up* of each *file* leading them forth, right downe the *Intervales*, which are on the *left hand*; untill they are come *even*, with the Reere: and then *ſtand*, and *face* to their *leader*, and they are *reduced*, as at firſt. The *doubling* of *files* to the *left intire*, advancing; is after the ſame manner: It onely differeth in the *hand*: wherefore I ſpare the *figure*. They that love to be curious, may likewiſe *double files*, by *diviſion*, *advancing*.

G CHAP.

Chap. XXX.

Of Files, doubling their depth.

His next *doubling*, is a *doubling of the depth, to the right intire*: and is likewise, a *doubling* of *files*, as the other last, shewen in the precedent *Chapter*. Being alike, both for *number* and *place*: notwithstanding, it *differeth* from the *other*, both in *manner* of executing, and in some sort of the *matter* executed. For whereas the other *doubling*, by *advancing* of *files*, did *transferre* all the *even-files* into the ground before the Front. Contrariwise, this *doubling* doth *transferre* them into the *ground* next behind the *Reer*. And as in the *other doubling*, you may perceive halfe the *file-leaders*, to remaine in the *Front*; the other halfe to be *halfe-file leaders*. This *doubling*, hath halfe the *file-leaders* in the *front*: the other halfe being the last *ranke*, of the *Reere*. Those which were the former *Bringers up*, being become the two *innermost*, or *middlemost ranks*. The figure followeth, being demonstrated as the *body stands*; the *motion* being ended.

Files, double your depth to the Right: every man falling behinde his bringer up.

Front.

16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	1
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	2
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	3
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	4
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	5
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	6
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	7
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	8
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	8
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	7
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	6
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	5
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	4
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	3
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	2
	m		m		p		p		p		p		m		m	1

Left Flanke. *Right Flanke.*

Reere.

Files as you were, or

Bringers up, double your Ranks forward, to the left.

The manner of the *motion* for this *doubling*; is as followeth. The command being given; *files, double your depth to the right intire: every man falling behinde his bringer up:* then the *even files* (accounting from the *hand* named immediately *face about* to the *right*, and the *bringers up* of each of the *even*

files, turne behinde the *Bringers up* of the *odde files*, that *stand*. And so every man, as he commeth down to the *Reere*, turneth to the *left* behinde him, that *marcheth* downe the next before him; untill those that were the *leaders* of the *even files*, are become the *bringers up* to those which were the *odde files*. The *reducement* is as followeth. *Bringers up that now are, double your ranks forward to the left.* Which being performed, they are, as at the first. If you would be instructed in the manner, turne backe and see it: where the *bringers up double* their *ranks* forward, into the *front*. It is the fourteenth Chapter.

I have willingly past over another *doubling* of the depth, because it is much after the manner of that, which is done by *advancing file upon file*; which is the *doubling* of the last Chapter. It differeth onely thus. In the last *figure*, the *even* files *marched* forth; placing themselves before the *odde files*. And in this which I have omitted, the *even files* are to *face about*, and *march* forth right towards the *reere*; untill the *file-leaders* of the *even files*, have placed themselves, just behinde the *bringers up* of the *odde files*: and then every man to face to his *leader*. Some have a doubling of the depth by *countermarch*. Which I conceive scarce worth penning, yet willing to leave every man to his owne liking; & as I do nothing in it, so I'le say nothing of it. There are others that have written concerning *doublings* of *place*, nevertheles because they are nothing, but the *opening* of *ranks* & *files*, wherby *length* or *depth* of your *battell* is *extended*, and so *doubled*

in

in *place*, and not in *number*. I forbeare to write further of them, desiring not to treate of such things, which are more *curious* then *necessary*.

Chap. XXXI.

Of Conversion and Inversion, with their words of Command, and Reducements.

According to my promise, I will next shew the difference, betweene *Inversion* and *Conversion*: the very names whereof is such a puzzling unto many, that they are more troubled with the *words*, then the worke. Some are of opinion, that they are both one; differing in *letter* not in *matter*. Others would have a difference, if they could tell how, or where. But generally, they are so chopt and changed, one for the other; that the *Souldier* cannot in truth tell which is either. But that you may not be deceived, take this for a *rule*: that *Inversion doth alwaies produce, file, or files*; and *Conversion, ranke*, or *rankes*. *Inversion* consists of the *files filing*, or of *rankes filing*. *Conversion* of *ranks ranking*, to the *right* or *left*. Or by *increase* of *files*, *ranking* by *even*, or *uneven* parts: and of *ranks wheeling*, to the *right* or *left*. I shall speake further of them in their severall places. But by the way, you are to observe, that *Inversion* and *Con-*

version, require larger *distances* of *Ground*, then any other *Motions*; which must be, the *Officers* care, *to open* the *ranks*, or *files*, to such *distance* as shall be necessary, to containe the *rankes* or *files*, so to be *Inverted* or *Converted*, whether it be *double-distance*, or *twice double-distance* for any other lesser, or larger quantity of ground. The words of *Command*, with their severall *Reducements*, are as followeth.

Inversion.

Files, file one, to the { Right, / Left, } { File-leaders, lead up your files as you were, }

Files, file to the *right* and *left* by division.

Ranks, file to the { Right, / Left, / Right, & left. } { Files, ranke as you were. }

Conversion.

Ranks, ranke { 3,5,7, or 9, to the right / 4,6,8, or 10, to the left / by increase 2.4.6.8.&c. to the right / by increase 1.3.5.7.&c. to the left / intire to the right into the front / intire into the left into the front / by division into the front } { Ranks, ranke as you were. }

Ranks, wheele to the { Right / Left / Right and Left } { Ranks, ranke as you were. }

Files,

Files, rank { 3,5,7, or 9. to the right / 4,6,8, or 10. to the left / by increase to the right, 1,3,5,7, &c. / by increase to the left, 2,4,6,8, &c. / to the right, to the left } into the front. } Ranks, file as you were.

To avoid the words of *Inversion*, and *Conversion*, I have delivered the directions, with once naming either of them. Onely I have expreſt the *ſix* firſt *words* of *Command*, to be *Inversion*, and theſe laſt *ſixteen*, to be *Converſion*. For I conceive it; not to be ſo neceſſary, to adde to every *word* of *Command*, *Inverſion*, or *Converſion*. For by ſo doing, the unlearned, and ignorant *Souldier* will be ſo tranſported, with the ſtrangneſſe of the *word*; that he will ſcarce, by any meanes be made, capable of the *matter*: For my own part, I have ever held this opinion: that the eaſieſt *expreſſions*, are ever to be preferred in the way of *inſtruction*, to young *Souldiers*. I might have much inlarged my ſelf, in the *words* of direction, concerning this ſubject: but theſe being perfectly attained; others by practice, wil be gained. I at the firſt intēded, to have drawn *figure*, for every one of theſe *words*, of *Command*: but I have better conſidered, that ſome of them will require, ſo much roome: and againe are ſo eaſie to be underſtood without their *figures*; that I conceive, I may both ſpare the pains, and coſt; and onely deliver the *figures* of ſome few of them, which will be the moſt neceſſary. And for the o-

thers I will expresse in *words*, what they will produce, in *figure*.

Chap. XXXII.

Of Files, *filing in sequence*.

The Command is,

Files, file on to the right.

Inversion.

TO performe this *word* of *Command*, or *Direction*. The *right hand file*, *marcheth* away *single*; The *second file* from the *right*, falleth into the *Reere* of the *first*. The *third*, behind the *second*; The *fourth*, behind the *third*. And so consequently, all the rest of the *files*; fall into the *Reere* of their next *right-hand-files*, untill all the whole *Company*, become one *file*. It may bee usefull, to passe some narrow bridge, or thicket, or else-where; where but one, at once can passe: the *Commander* being willing, to preserve his *files*, intire, and whole. The way for the *Reducement*, may be after this manner. The place being convenient, every *file-leader*, is to *lead* up his *file*, to the *left* of him, that *marcheth* before him; untill all the *file-leaders*, are *even* in *ranke* together: their files orderly following them. The

word

word for the *Reducement*; is, *File-leaders, Lead up your files as you were:* For *files*, to *file on* in *sequence*, to the *left*; may be performed, after the same manner: but differeth in the *hand*. Yet works the same effect; only, the *right-hand-file-leader, led* the *other:* and the *elft-hand-file, fell* last of all into the *Reere*. *This*, contrariwise, is *led* forth by the *left-hand-file:* and the *right-hand-file*, is the *last*, that taketh place, in the *Reere* of the *extended file*.

Files, file to the Right and Left by Division.

This *files filing* by *division*; is wrought after the same manner: but *differeth* in this; *That the right-hand-file of the Company, and the left-hand-file of the same, begin to lead forth at one, and the same time in their severall places. The files of the right flanke falling likewise, behind the Right-hand-file: the files of the left flank, falling in like manner, behind the left-hand-file.* So, that if the *body* be *flankt* with *Musketiers*; then this *filing* by *division*, bringeth all the *Musketiers* into the *front-division:* and the *Pikes* in the *Reere* of them. If there be an *odde file*, it most commonly *falleth* to the *right*. The *word* for *Reducement* is; *File-leaders, lead up your files as you were.* This sort of *Inversion*, is called *filing in sequence*. I will now shew another sort of *Inversion*, which is by *Ranks filing*. The which I will demonstrate unto you, by two *figures*, which will be sufficient, to instruct the desirous.

CHAP.

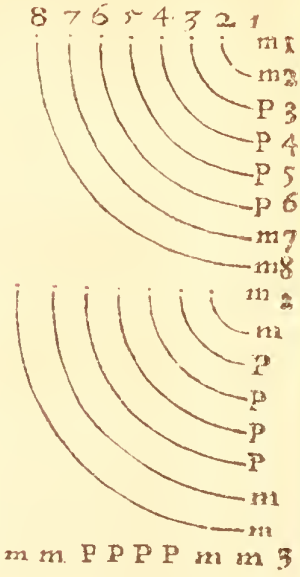
Chap. XXXIII.

Of inverting Rankes; or Rankes filing.

THis following *figure* of *Inversion*, is of *Ranks, filing to the right; where all the Ranks are to be inverted, into the out-most-file to the right*; For the doing whereof, let all your *files*, be *closed* to their *order*, or *close order*; as shall bee thought most necessary: the *ranks opened*, either *forward*, or *backward*, to *double-distãce*, or twice *double-distance*, (more or lesse) as the *Commander* shall see most convenient, according to his number. Having *closed* your *files*, and *opened* your *ranks*, unto their due *distance*; then, let every *ranke*, move after his *right-hand-man*, untill every *ranke* stand right in *file*, after the *right-hand-leader* of his rank. In this *figure*, I have onely *opened* the *foure first ranks* to their distance, and *inverted* but *two* of the *foure*. By which it may easily be perceived, both the *manner* of the *worke*, and the *matter* which is to be *wrought*. But if the *Commander* will performe it upon a *March*; then they shall not need to *open* to any *distance*, but to take their *distance*, in the *execution*: which is the easiest way; and will be thus performed. The *right-hand-man* of the *first ranke*, *marcheth* forth right; all his *ranke facing* to the *right*, and *marching file-wise* after him. The *right-hand-*

Ranks, file to the right.

Front.



hand-man, of the Second *ranke*, *falling* immediately after the *left hand-man* of the First *ranke*, all his *ranke* in like manner following of him. The *right-hand-man* of the Third *ranke*, after the *left-hand-man* of the Second; his *ranke* likewise following of him. And so for all the rest, untill they are all become one *file*.

m m p p p p m m 4.

This *Rankes fileing*, is sooner performed, and *reduced*; then *Files fileing*: and in the *Reducement* will presently be ready to make resistance, against any opposition in the *Front*. Whereas if *Files, filé*; it will be a great while before the *File-leaders* will be able to *make*

m m p p p p m m 5.
m m p p p p m m 6.
m m p p p p m m 7.
m m p p p p m m 8.
Reere.

Files, Ranke as ye were.

good

Place this Figure in Chapter 33. betweene folio 90, and 91.

good the *Front*: The manner of the *Reducement* of this *figure*, is as followeth. If they were *Eight* men, before in *ranke*, then the first *Eight* men, *ranke* to the *Left*, into the *front*. The next *Eight* men, *ranke* next after them, which makes the second *ranke*. The third *Eight* men, *ranking* to the *left*, make the third *ranke*. And so forward for the rest, untill they are *reduced*, as at the first. But it may be, that some will object; That in this *figure*, there is *mixture* of *Armes*; which if they will avoyd, they may either *March* forwards their *Muskettiers* of each *division*, and *close* them before the *Pikes*; and *invert* them first. Or they may *March* forwards their *Pikes* first, and leave their *Muskettiers* to come in the *Reere*. Or if they please, they may upon a long *March*, first *invert* the *front-division* of *Muskettiers*: then their *Pikes*, and last the *Reere-division* of *Muskettiers*; which way so ever it be done. The *Word* for the *reducement* will be, *Files, ranke as you were.*

Rankes, file to the Left, is performed after the same manner. It *differeth* from this last done, but onely in the *hand*. And whereas the *Right-hand-file-Leader*, was the *Leader* of the last, this would be *led* by the *left-hand-file-Leader*. The *left-hand-Leader* of each *ranke*, leading forth his *ranke file-wise*, as before it was performed; but to the *contrary hand*. I spare the *figure*,

CHAP.

Chap. XXXIIII.

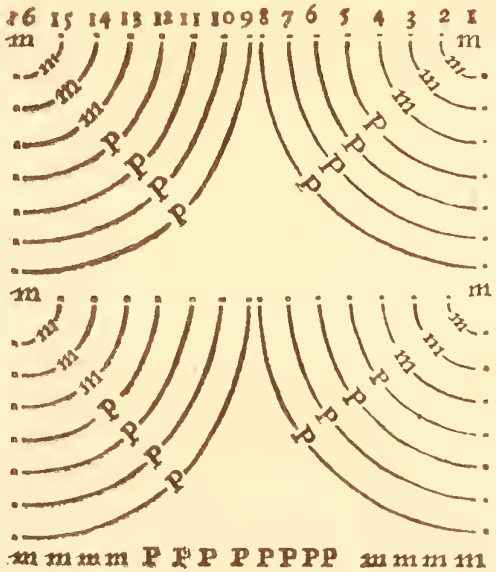
Of Rankes filing by division: and how vsefull.

THis next *figure* of *Inversion*, is *Rankes filing by division is a doubling of the depth, by unequall proportion.* For whereas in most of all other *doublings*, the Number of the Length, or Depth is augmented, but to double their former proportion of Number: this *doubling* of *Inversion*, makes their Depth so many times more in number, as there are *files* to *double*. Or halfe so many times, if it be done by *Division*, as in the next following *figure*. It hath beene, of ancient use, amongst the old *Grecians*: and in these our latter times, it hath beene held of speciall use, to avoyd the shot of the great Ordnance, when of necessity we are to *march* against any *Battery*. It hath also been held good, to prevent the eminent danger of some great *shower* of *small shot*, likely to be powred out upon the *Front* of your *Battalia*. It may also serue for an Honourable *passage*, large *interualle*, *street*, or *gallery*, (as some call it) for any great *Personage*, or *Commander* to passe through. It is also of common use, for the *lodging* of the *Colours*, or *Ensigne*. And many other such like.

For

Rankes, file to the Right and Left; by division.

Front.



m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m

m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m

Reere.

Files, ranke as you were.

this Figure in Chapter 34.
reene folio 92, *and* 93.

For instruction how to performe this *Motion*, It is the same with the last *figure*; differing onely in this; That as in the other *figure*, all the whole *rankes* turned to the *right*, behind their *right-hand-men*: In this *Motion*, the *left-flanke*, (or *halfe-rankes* to the *left*) fall into the outmost *file* to the *left*: The *halfe-rankes* to the *right*, behind their severall *right-hand-men*: as you may perceive in part by the *figure*. I have shewen the *figure*, in the manner of the *action*, not fully performed: The *pricks rankewise*, denoting the places, from whence they came: The Quarter-circles, shewing the way of the *Motion*: The *prickes file-wise*, directing, or shewing their Places they are going too.

For *reducement* to the *figure*: it is no more then this. The Rankes which before *inverted* into *files*, now againe *convert* into *rankes*, as they were. The *word* of Command for it, is, *Files, ranke to the right and left inward, as you were.*

I hope, this that hath already been shewen, will be sufficient, (at least in some small measure) to give satisfaction to those, which as yet have not knowne what is meant by *Inversion*. Yet I could wish, that such as exercise the Companies of the Trained-Bands of this Kingdome; would rather make use of the plainer *word* of *demonstration*; which is, *Rankes, file*, or *Files, file*: and leave out the word *Inversion*, as a word not sutable with the Capacity of divers of our Souldiers of the Trained-Bands. Especially of this City, where Porters, Colliars, Water-bearers, and Broomemen, are thrust

thruſt into the roomes of men, of better quality, as though they themſelves were too good, to doe the King and Country ſervice.

Chap. XXXV.

Of the ſeverall parts of Converſion: and how they are to be underſtood.

THe next branch of *Diſcipline* which I offer to your view, ſhall be of *Converſion*: and of its ſeverall parts: wherein if there be any that thinke me tedious; let them turne it over, and ſettle on ſome other part, which may be to them more delectable: whileſt I, in the meane time, ſhall endeavour to give content to all, neither ſtuffing out my *booke* with *needleſſe diſcourſes*; nor yet too much abbreviating the *matter*, whereby to render it too obſcure unto the commoneſt capacity. Wherefore take their parts as they hereafter follow.

Converſion conſiſts of theſe parts, *viz.* Of

- Ranks ranking
  - in equall parts 1
  - in unequall parts 2
  - intire into the Front 3
  - by diviſion into the Front 4
  - by wheeling to the Flanks 5
- Files ranking
  - by equall parts 6
  - by unequall parts 7
  - intire into the Front. 8

Firſt,

First of *ranks ranking*, in *even* or *equall* parts. Which is to be understood, *when there are twelve, or twenty, (more or lesse) marching abreast, and the Commander (either for the narrowneſle of a paſſage, or for ſome other intent) cauſeth his rankes to ranke three or ſixe abreaſt, or five, ten, or any other number, either according to the place, or occaſion; every ranke holding equality of number.*

Secondly, *rankes* then *ranke* by *unequall parts*: when they *ranke by increaſe or decreaſe*. As when the firſt ranke ſhall be three, the next five, then ſeven, nine, &c. which is commonly uſed, for the making of *Diamond*, and *Triangular figures*.

Thirdly, *ranks* then *ranke intire, into the front*: when the *firſt ranke ſtands: the ſecond ranke placeth it ſelfe on the right or left of the firſt: the third by the ſecond, the fourth by the third, and ſo forward for all the reſt*, untill *all the rankes*, (either to the *right* or *left*) according to direction *are become one ranke in the front*.

Fourthly, *rankes* then *ranke by diviſion into the front*, when the *ſecond ranke*, and all the reſt of the rankes behinde, open to the *right* and *left*: the one part going to the *right*, the other to the *left*; *ranking even* with the *firſt*, as before, and all together making one *ranke*.

Fiftly, *Ranks*, then *ranke* to the *flanke* or *flankes*; when either *the right hand man of each ranke, or the left hand man* (or both together) *are as it were the Hindge of the motion, the reſt of each ranke wheeling about them, to the right or left*, or each hand by diviſion) *untill that every ranke be brought into the diſtance*

stance which was before the ranke, betweene the right hand-man, of the ranke next before, and the right hand-man of the same ranke you stand in. If it be to the *left*, then they *wheele* into the *distance* betweene the *left-hand-leaders* of each ranke. If it be by *division*, then *halfe* the ranke wheeleth to the *right*: the other *halfe* to the *left*, and produceth two *rankes*.

Sixthly, *Files*, then *rankes by equall parts*: when they rank three, foure, or five, abreſt (more or leſſe) ſtill keeping the number of men in ranke, of due proportion. If you ranke three abreſt (either to the right or left) and your *files* be but eight *deepe*; then the firſt ſixe men make two rankes, the third ranke muſt be made up by the leader of the *ſecond* file. And ſo for all the reſt. If you ranke foure, and the *files* be eight *deepe*, then every *file* makes two *rankes*. If you ranke five, the files being 8 *deep*, then the firſt five men make a ranke: and the firſt two men of the ſecond *file* from the *hand* named, make up the *ſecond ranke*. Five of the other ſixe, make up the *third ranke*. And ſo forward for the reſt. If the *depth* of the *file* were ten men, then it would make two even *rankes*.

Seventhly, *Files* then ranke by unequall parts: when they either ranke by progreſſionall increaſe, or by decreaſe. As when every ranke exceeds the ranke before it, by two, three, or foure, be it more or leſſe. Or elſe that each ranke decreaſeth, after the ſame manner.

Eightly, *Files* then ranke intire into the *front*; when there is *ſo much diſtance betweene file and file, as will containe each file, ranke-wiſe: every man in*

the

the file marching forwards to the right or left, as shall be commanded, untill he stand even in ranke, with the leader of his file, which brings the body into one ranke.

Chap. XXXVI.

Of Rankes wheeling by Conversion.

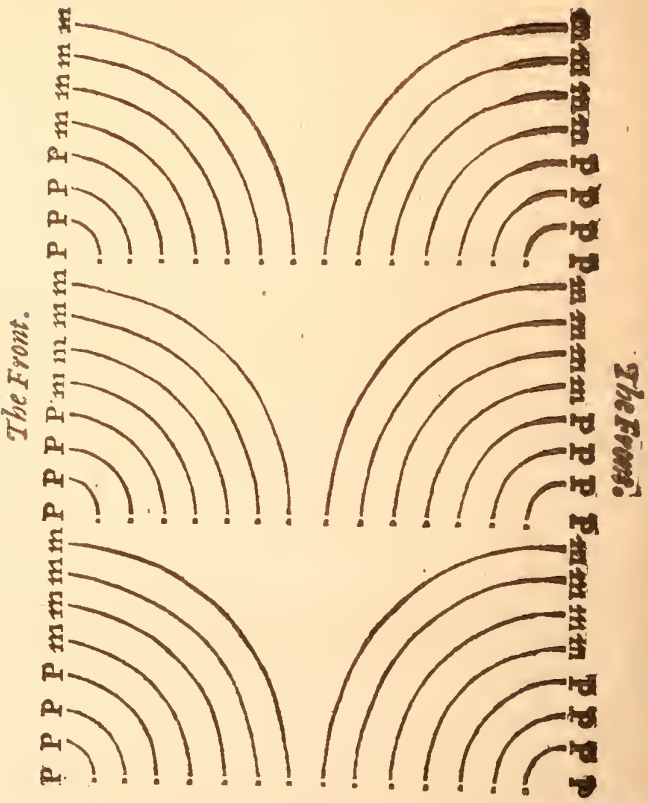
IF I would strive to bee curious, I should need no other subject to lengthen my discourse, but onely this, of *Inversion* and *Conversion*, which of it selfe would yeeld matter sufficient to make a Booke of. But I have taken a large taske. And therefore like the Artists in Geography, who sometimes by a *spot*, present a *Town*, and by a *wrinckled line*, a large *River*: so must I crave of the favourable Reader, that in this small Treatise of Discipline, he will not expect that I should inlarge my selfe so amply, as I might, upon every part. For then my booke would grow beyond his bounds, and I beyond my promise; but lest I be taxed for digression, this that hath already beene shewne, may suffice for *Conversion*. But because it may be expected, that I should shew *Conversion* in Figure, as well as the other Motions, therefore to gratifie such, I shall demonstrate two

Figures unto them: which may serve for all the rest. The one shall be of *rankes wheeling, by Conversion*: the other of *files ranking, foure to the left*. The word of *command* for the first, stands placed right over the *figure*.

This

Rankes, wheele to the right and left by diuision.

The First Front.



p p p p m m m m m m m m p p p p
p p p p m m m m m m m m p p p p
p p p p m m m m m m m m p p p p
p p p p m m m m m m m m p p p p

Reere.

Place this Figure in Chapter 36. betweene folio 98. and 99.

Rankes, wheele to the right and left by division.

The First Front.

This foregoing *figure* of *Converſion*, is of *Rankes, wheeling to the right and left*, or *ranks ranking, to each flanke by wheeling*. It differeth from *ranks filing*, both in manner and matter. In the manner thus, Whereas in *ranks filing* to the right and left; the *right* and *left-hand file-leaders*, preſerve and continue their places; and with that, their honours. In this *wheeling by Converſion to the right and left*, contrariwiſe: the *innermoſt file-leaders*, become the *outmoſt* men in that part where the *front* ſtood; the other *file-leaders ranking even* within them. Some men have called this, *Rankes, filing by Converſion, to the right and left*, but corruptly. For *converſion* alwaies produceth *rankes*, as I formerly ſaid: and *inverſion, files*. But their miſtake groweth from this, that when *rankes wheele to the right*, or *right* and *left*, then (ſay they) they by *wheeling*, become *file*, or *files*, which is a palpable *miſtake*. For when we have any *command* for *wheeling*, it is a *maxime* for us, to *wheele our aſpects unto the hand or part named*. By which doing, we either become ranke, or rankes: and not files, as ſome have ſought formerly to maintaine. One uſe, among many, for this *motion* is. It is the ſpeedieſt way for a great *body* (if they have their due diſtance) to *give fire to one, or both flanks*, that as yet I know of. The way to performe this *motion*, is as followeth. The *right* and *left-hand-men*, of every *ranke*, became the *Hindges* of the *motion*: the reſt of each ranke, *wheeling by equall diviſion*, to the right and left about, and above their right and left-hand Leaders, untill they become ranks to the flanks. As you may per-

perceive by the Figure, where the *pricks* denote unto you, the *places* they stood in before the *motion:* the *quarter circles*, shewing the *way* of their *motion:* themselves being converted into two ranks, sheweth the motion executed. I have onely *converted* three of the rankes; for it would have taken too much roome, to have *wheeled* all the *ranks*. And it is easie by this that is shewne, to conceive the rest. If you would avoid *mixture of Armes*, then place all your *Muskettiers*, either in *Front*, or *Reere:* or else *wheele* onely your *Muskettiers*, and leave your *Pikes*, *standing*. Or else it may be done; the *body marching* at *length:* the *Muskettiers* being in the *front*, and *reere Divisions*. The *word* for the *reducement* is; *rankes*, *ranke as you were*.

The easiest way for the *reducement*, will be first for to *face* to the *reere*, and then to *wheele backe* into their places. Then, *face* to their *leader*; and they will be reduced as at first. Now we will come to shew the next *figure* of *Conversion*, which is of *files* converted into *ranks* by *equall proportion*.

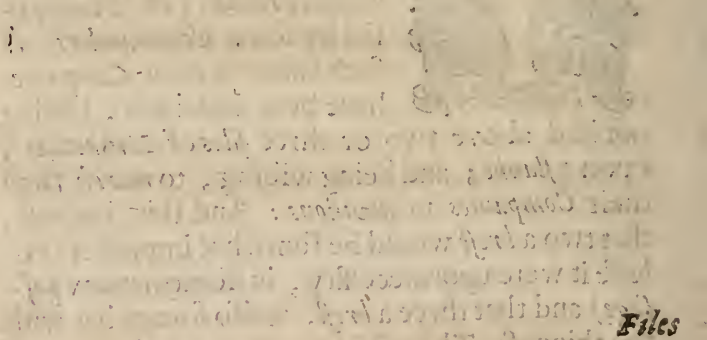
Chap.

Chap. XXXVII.

Of Files ranking in equall parts.

IN this *Chapter*, I intend to ſhew the *manner*, *of files ranking by Converſion*, *in equall parts*; which *Motion*, I have ſeene uſed by ſome *Commanders*, at ſuch times as their *Companies* have been but ſmall, having not had above two or three *files* of *Muskettiers*, upon a *flanke*; and being willing, to *march forth* their *Companies* in *diviſions*: And this, becauſe, that two a *breſt* would be ſomwhat improper (unleſſe it were upon neceſſity, in ſome narrow *paſſage*) and that three a *breſt*, is alſo ſomewhat with the thinneſt. Therefore to augment the *front* of their march, they have *ſhortned* ſomewhat of their *depths*, in each diviſion: by cauſing their *files*, to *ranke* foure, or five, according as their *depth* may be, when the *Command* ſhall be given. This *Motion* of *Converſion*, may alſo be uſefull for *larger bodies*. For if upon a *March*, you are to paſſe thorough ſome *ſtreight*, where not above foure or five, can *march* a *breſt*; and that being paſt thorough, you are to direct your courſe, to the *right*, or *left*: If

your way be to the *right*, then cause your *files* to ranke to the *left*: If to the *left*, then let the *files* ranke to the contrary hand. For by so doing; having past the *streight*, and *faced* your *body* that way, which you intend your *March*, by commanding the *File-leaders* to *march*; and the *half-files* to *stand*, and take their places: your *body* will be led again by their *proper file-leaders*, all a *breast*; the *Musketiers* becomming again the *Flankers*, which in the passage of the *streight*, were in the *Front* and *Reere*. For the better understanding the manner of the *Motion*, observe the following *figure*.



Files, ranke foure to the left.

Front.

This was the

1 File { m m m m *f.*
m m m m *h.*
2 File { m m m m *f.*
m m m m *h.*
3 File { m m m m *f.*
m m m m *h.*
4 File { m m m m *f.*
m m m m *h.*
5 File { p p p p *f.*
p p p p *h.*
6 File { p p p p *f.*
p p p p *h.*
7 File { p p p p *f.*
p p p p *h.*
8 File { p p p p *f.*
p p p p *h.*

p *f*

p

p

p p *h*

p

m m m m p p p p
m m m m p p p p
m m m m p p p
m m m m p p p
m m m m p p p
m m m m p p p
m m m m p p p
m m m m p p p

Reere.

The way to performe this *Motion*, is as followeth. The *Command* being first given (as aboveſaid) the *right-hand-file-leader*, leadeth forth his *file*: & the *three next* men behind him, move forwards to the *left* of each other; untill they *ranke even* a *breſt* with their *file-leader*. The next *foure*, in like manner *ranking* to the *left*, make the *ſecond ranke*. The *file-leader* of the *ſecond file*, placeth himſelfe, next after him, that was the *half-file-leader* of the *firſt*, which now is become the *right-hand-man* of the *ſecond ranke*; the three *next men* behind him, making up of his *rank*, in like manner. And ſo forward for all the reſt, untill the *Motion* be fully perfected. This converts each *file*, into two *ranks*; and brings all the *proper file-leaders*, and *half-file-leaders*, to make the *outmoſt file* to the *right*: the *Bringers-up*, both of the *Front*, and *Reere-half-files*; make the *outermoſt file* to the *left*. The *figures* of *Number*, which are on the *left flanke* of the *figure*, in which, the word *file* added to each of them, demonſtrate *places* of the *firſt*, *ſecond*, *third*, and *fourth file*, and ſo conſequently for all the reſt; according to their *former ſtanding*, and the *places* they now occupy, being *converted* into *ranks*. The *letters f*, and *h*, which are placed on the *right flanke*, ſhewes the *places* of thoſe, which were the *file-leaders*, and *half-file-leaders*: each of the *proper file-leaders*, having now his *half-file-leader*, next after him. I have ſhowne this *figure* partly *performed*, partly *performing*, and partly *ſtanding*, as before the *Motion* began.

For

For *reducement*, of this *Motion* of *files ranking*, foure to the *left*: One way is, to cause your *ranks to file*, (or *invert*) *to the right*, which being done, *Command* every *File-leader*, *to lead up his file to the left*: and so every man will have his *place*: For another way, *Face the whole body to the right*, *and command the File-leaders to march*, *and half-files to stand, and take their places*: and then they are all *reduced*, onely the *file-leaders* of the *right-flanke*, are on the *left*; and the *file-leaders* of the *left-flanke*, are on the *right*: which is *reduced*, by any *entire Countermarch, of ranke, or file.*

Chap. XXXVIII.

The conclusion of doublings.

THere are yet another sort of *Doublings*, both of *length* and *depth*, which are performed by *divisionall wheelings*. Which because they have ever been accounted for *wheelings*, I will not displace them; but still rank them in their former places: although in truth they are *doublings*. The *working part* indeed is *wheeling*; but the *intent*, or *thing wrought*, is *Doubling*. I will speake further of them, when I come to *shew*

them

them, in their severall places. And here I mean to set a *Period* to our *Doublings*. Concluding, that those *Souldiers*, who can put every one of these to his right use; as also give to each his right reducement, must needs be skilfull, and expert, in this part, of the *Art Military*. And contrariwise, they that are ignorant in these *Doublings*; can never truly attain, to the right managing of a *Foot-company*, either for *exercise*, or *service*. For *doublings*, indeed, are the only *Motions*, for *variety* and *alteration* of *figures*, or *formes* of *battaile*: No other *Motions* doing the like. And therefore *Doublings*, must needs be accounted the most *excellent* amongst all the *Motions*.

You that have eyes *to read, and* skill *to judge*;
And have perus'd these doublings *I have done*:
Though I have tedious *been, yet do not grudge*:
For you know well, I have skipt over some.
But marvell not: the cause *I do not show them,*
It is not much materiall for to know them.

Those that are skilfull *in the* Art *of* Warre,
And take delight to exercise *their* men:
Shall find more pleasure in these doublings *farre,*
If that they intermixe *them now and then.*
And so contrive their doublings *in these cases,*
That lastly one word *brings them to their* places.

Why

Why in our Country *do we* Captains *chuſe,*
That have no skill *nor* artfull *inclination?*
They do themſelves and Country *much abuſe:*
Thus to deceive *them in their expectation.*
I thinke the Cauſe *of this fault in our* Nation
Is, that our Gentry *holds it not in* faſhion.

But ſome, perhaps, will ſay, I am too bold;
There's no ſuch need for Captains *to have* skill.
The Muſter-maſters *have enough (ſome hold)*
The Captains *and the* Counties *for to fill.*
So whileſt the Muſter-maſter *doth the* labour.
The Officers *may* play *upon a* Tabour.

But ſtay! me thinks, one puls me by the ſleeve:
And tels me that I have my ſelfe forgot.
Wherefore of doublings, *here I take my leave:*
Intreating thoſe that read, miſtake *me not.*
Let *Muſter-maſters* take their *money*, then;
But let the *Captains* exerciſe their men.

CHAP.

Chap. XXXIX.

of Countermarches. Their Antiquity, and words of direction.

THe next branch of *Discipline* which offers it selfe to your perusall, are *Countermarches*: which are of three kinds. To wit, *Chorean, Lacedæmonian, Macedonian*: which is, Maintaining, Loosing, and Gaining. Each of them are to be performed two manner of waies. One by *File*: the other by *Ranke*.

There are also *Counter-marches, Intire* and *Divisionall*. But divers men, are divers for their opinions concerning the *Macedonian* and *Lacedæmonian* Counter-marches. Some will have the *Macedonian*, A Counter-march of gaining of ground; because that it transfers the *Battalia*, into the ground before the *Front*. Others will have it, A Counter-march of losse of ground; because (say they) the *Enemy* being in the *Reere*, it makes a semblance of flying. Some will have the *Lacedæmonian*, A Counter-march of gaining of ground: because the *Enemy* appearing in the *Reere*, it makes a semblance of Charging or falling on. Others call it, A Countermarch of losse of ground: because it looseth all that

that ground the *Battalia* ſtood upon; taking in ſtead thereof, the ground behind the *Reere*. There are others of opinion, That there are Countermarches of loſſe and gaine, in either of them. All theſe are furniſhed with *reaſons*, to backe their *opinions*. But if I ſhould ſtand to ſhew their many and ſeverall reaſons, I might well be thought to be without reaſon my ſelfe. My opinion is; That taking the ground before the *Front*, is gaining ground: and that to leave the ground we ſtood on, to take the ground next behind the *Reere*, is loſſe of ground: And yet to take either, whereby there is advantage gotten, muſt needs be gaining. But where the matter it ſelfe is ſo indifferent, it were fondneſſe to ſpend longer time about it. Wherefore note, That *Countermarches* were of ancient uſe amongſt the Greekes many hundred of yeeres ſince, & from them learned and practiſed, by many other *Nations*; and ſo ſtill continued unto this day. But as the *Snow-ball* by much rowling, becomes the greater: So, in like manner, theſe *Countermarches* have received *addition* in all ages. So that the three originall ones are now become more then thirty accounting thoſe *diviſionall*. And yet are all of them fathered upon one or other, of the three kinds. Though ſome of them will ſcarcely be owned or acknowledged; as you ſhall perceive, when I come to ſhew them in their ſeverall places. But amongſt all the *Motions*, this might be the beſt ſpared: as being leaſt *beneficiall*, to this our *moderne Diſcipline*. But becauſe that *knowledge is no burthen*; and that at ſome times they may be uſefull: Therefore

fore first take the *words* of *command* or *direction*, which are as followeth.

Intire Countermarches, by file.

Chorean. Files {right / left} hand countermarch.

Lacedemon. Files {right / left} countermarch, every man turning on the ground he stands.

Macedon. File-leaders, face {right / left} about to the {right / left}, the rest passe through to the {right / left}, and place your selues behind your Leaders.

Bastard Countermarch. File-leaders stand; the rest {right / left} passe through to the {right / left} placing your selues before your Leaders.

Bast. Count. File-leaders stand, the rest {right / left} passe through to the {right / left} placing your selues before your Leaders; following your Bringers up.

Lacedemon. Bringers up, face {right: / left:} about to the {right / left}, the rest passe through to the {right / left} and place your selues before your bringers up.

Lacedemon. Bringers up, stand: the rest of the Body passe through {right / left} to the {right / left} placing your selues behinde your bringers up.

Intire Countermarches by Ranks.

Cretan or Chorean. Ranks {right / left} to the {right / left} Countermarch.

Lacedemonian Ranks {right / left} to the {right / left} countermarch, every man turning on the ground he stands.

This

This right hand file, face to the left: the reſt paſſe through to the right: placing your ſelues behind your right hand men. Macedonian.

This left hand file may face to the right, and do as much.

This {right / left} hand file ſtand; the reſt {right, / left,} paſſe through to the {left, / right,} placing your ſelues on the {right / left} hand men. Baſt. Countermarch.

This {right / left} hand file {right, / left,} face to the {left, / right,} the reſt paſſe through to the {right, / left,} placing your ſelues before your {right / left} hand men. Lacedemonian.

Diviſionall Countermarches, by Files.

Countermarch front and reere into the midſt. Cretan or Chorean.

File-leaders, and halfe-file-leaders, ſtand; the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelues before your Leaders. Baſt. Countermarch.

File-leaders, and Bringers up, ſtand; the reſt paſſe through to the right: and place your ſelues before your Leaders and Bringers up. Lacedemonian.

File-leaders, face about; Bringers up, ſtand; the reſt paſſe through to the Right; and place your ſelues behinde your Leaders and Bringers up. Macedonian.

Front-halfe-files, interchange ground with the Reere. Baſt. Counter.

Diviſionall Countermarches by ranks.

Countermarch your (wings or) Flanks into the midſt. Chorean or Cretan.

middest (or Center).

Lacedemonian. The out-most-file of each Flanke, face outward: the rest passe through to the right and left; placing your selues behinde your out-side men.

Macedonian. The out-most file of each Flanke, face inward: the rest passe through to the right and left; placing your selues behinde your outside men.

Bast. Counter. The out-most file of each flanke, stand: the rest passe through to the right and left, and place your selues on the outside of your outside men. Interchange your Flanks.

Note, what is done by the *out most files*, may be *reduced* by converting the *command* to the *innermost* files; but must be done before they have *closed* their *divisions*, &c.

Chap. XL.

Of the Chorean Countermarch: and the way to performe it.

The distance for Countermarch is, sixe foot, or open order in ranke and file.

I Could willingly have *prickt* a *Figure*, for each of these severall *countermarches*, but that they will take up too much roome. And therefore I will onely *pricke* some few of the hardest of them; and for the rest, I will endeavour by *words* to make them as facile as I may: that so they may be apprehended by the meanest capacitie.

tie. And first I will begin with the (*Persian, Cretan,* or) *Chorean Countermarch.* The *word* of *Command* or *Direction* is,

Files to the Right hand, Countermarch.

This *Chorean Countermarch*, is by some called the *Moderne Countermarch.* I conceive their reason to be, because that it is more in use than any of the other: Or else, for antiquitie, it might claime many ages. It is a *Countermarch for maintaining of ground:* for it worketh its effect, on the *same ground it stands*; neither *loosing* nor *gaining.* But it *transferres* the *file-leaders*, into the *place* of the bringers up: and the *bringers up*, into the *place* of the *file-leaders*: withall turning the *aspect* of the *body* or *battalia*, to the Reere. The way to performe this *motion*, is as followeth. Assoone as the *word* of *command* is given, if it be to the *right*, then all the *file-leaders* step forwards with their right legges, and *face* about to the *right*: every *file-leader* with his file following him, passing downe towards the *Reere*, through the *intervall* on his right hand, still observing, to keepe *even* in *ranke* with his *right hand man.* But by the way, note that no man must *turne*, untill he come to the *ground* where at first his *file-leader* began the *Countermarch.* This *motion* is then performed, when the *bringers up*, have attained unto the *place* where before their *file-leaders* stood: being *faced* right after them; *Files, countermarch to the left.*

Note, that when there is a Countermarch commanded without any other direction; then it is always intended, a *Chorean* countermarch.

To *countermarch* to the *left*, worketh the same

effect; and is done after the same manner: onely *differing* in the *hand*.

For *reducement*, if you *countermarch* to the *right*; do as much to the *left*: and they will be as they were. For any *intire countermarch* of *files*, will be *reduced* (of what kinde soever) by making another *intire countermarch*, to what *hand* soever.

Chap. XLI.

Of Countermarching to loose Ground.

The Command is.

Files to the Right, Countermarch: every man turning after his Leader, on the Ground he stands.

Lacedemoni.

His *Lacedemonian countermarch*, is a *Countermarch of losse of ground*; for *that it leaves all the ground the Battalia formerly did conteine, and in lieu or place thereof taketh the ground behinde the Reere.* This *Countermarch* is to be performed, when the *Bodie* is upon a *stand*. And as the *Chorean*, turnes the *Aspect towards the Reere*. The *Greekes* were wont with this *Countermarch*, to bring their *file-leaders* to oppose any enemie, appearing in the Reere: thereby gallantly bearding their enemies

mies in the teeth: neither politickly making shew of *flight*, whereby to bring the *enemie* into *disarray*; nor over providently carefull, of the *advantage* of *ground*. The *motion* of this *Countermarch*, is to be performed as followeth. The *file-leaders* of each *file*, are to step side-wayes to the *right*, and therewithall to *face about* to the *reere*; and so *march* even in *ranke* together downe betweene the* *Intervalls*, no man advancing a *foot* forwards, but turning in like manner after their *leaders*, when they are past by them; still observing to keep their due *distance*. And so a whole *ranke* together, still turning off to the *right*, each *Ranke* successively doing the like, untill the *Countermarch* be fully performed. Any *intire countermarch* of *files*, will *reduce* this. But for order sake, take one of the same sort to the contrary *hand*, which is.

* An Interval is the space of ground betweene file & file, or ranke and ranke; but in this place, is intended the space of ground betweene the files.

Files to the left, Countermarch: every man turning after his Leader, on the ground he stands.

I shall not need to speake further, concerning this *Countermarch* of losse of ground to the *left*; seeing that it differs from the other onely in the alteration of the *hand*. The substance and effect of both, being one and the same: onely I will now speake to a *second* sort of *Countermarch*, which is of the same kinde. The *Command* is.

Bringers up, face about to the Right, the rest passe through to the Reere, and place your selues before your Bringers up.

Lacedemoniã. This *Lacedemonian Countermarch* doth also loose the ground, whereon it formerly stood, and takes the ground behinde the *Reere*, the manner of the *motion* is as followeth: The last *ranke* or *Bringers up face* to the *Reere*, and stand: the rest of the *Body facing* about in like manner, and *passing* through or betweene their *bringers up*, and placing themselues even in *ranke* before them. The *motion* is begun, by the *ranke*, next the *bringers up*, and so continued; successively by the rest, untill the *Countermarch* be ended. It may be reduced, by doing the same to the *contrary hand*. Nevertheless for brevity sake, I will make use of a sprigge from the same bough, and reduce this *Lacedemon countermarch*, by another of the same kinde. The *Command* is,

Bringers up, stand, the rest passe through to the Right, and place your selues behind your Bringers up.

Lacedemonian. This *Lacedemonian countermarch*, is thus to be performed; the last *ranke* (or *bringers up*) are to *stand*; and the rest of the *body*, to *face* to the *Reere*, and passe through to the *Right*, and place themselues behinde their *bringers up*, contrary to the *countermarch* last showne, where they placed themselues before. The *motion* is also begun, by the second *ranke* from the *reere*, the rest following successively, untill the *file-leaders* are become the *Bringers up*: Then *face* them about after their proper *file-leaders*, and they are reduced.

CHAP.

Chap. XLII.

Of Countermarches to gaine ground, or the Macedonian Counter-march.

The Command is,

File-leader face about to the right, the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelves behinde your Leaders.

THis *Macedonian Counter-march*, is for *gaining ground*, for that it leaues the ground, the *Battalia* formerly ſtood upon, taking in lieu thereof, the ground next before the *front*. It alſo turnes the *aſpect* towards the *reere*. The *motion* of this *Counter-march* is from the *reere* to the *front*, contrary to the *Lacedemon*, whoſe *motion* is from the *front* to the *reere*: This *Macedonian Counter-march*, makes ſemblance in the *reere* of *flight*, but preſently produceth an orderly *ſettled front*, when perhaps the enemy, with a too early purſuit, hath broken the order of their array. Macedonian.

The way to performe this *Counter-march*, according to the directions formerly given, is as followeth: The *file-leaders* or *firſt ranke*, *face about* to the *right*: the reſt of the *body* paſſe through, betweene the *Intervalles*, (or diſtance of files) to the

left: and place themselves behinde their *leaders*; every ranke (beginning with that next the *file leaders*) passing through successively, and taking their places, untill the *Counter-march* be fully executed. It may be reduced as the rest, by doing the same to the *contrary hand*, or as I have formerly said, by any intire *counter-march* of *file*; and therefore I will reduce it by another *Macedonian counter-march*. The *command* is, as followeth.

File-leaders face to the Reere, the rest of the body passe through to the left, following your bringers up, placing your selves behinde your leaders.

Macedonian. This *Macedonian counter-march* is rather remembred for its antiquity, then excellencie, (as some more of them be) nevertheless if any will be curious to observe the *motion*, it may be performed as followeth: The *first ranke* (or *file-leaders*) *face* to the *reere*, then the *last ranke* begin the *counter-march*, passing forwarde betweene the *Intervalls*, the *seventh ranke* following the *eighth*, the *sixt* following the *seventh*, and so likewise the rest, untill the whole *body* be transferred, into the ground before the *front*, and then joyntly together, *facing* to the *right* about, after their *leaders*, the *counter marche* is ended. For *reducement*, observe this for all; that any intire *countermarch* of *file*, may be reduced, by another intire *counter-march* by *file*, of what *kinde*, or to what *hand* soever.

These three last *Chapters* of *counter-marches*, are the originall grounds of all the rest; yet I shall shew

ſhew one in the inſuing *Chapter*, which time hath begotten out of the latter *two*, which takes part with *either*, being abſolute in *neither*.

Chap. XLIII.

Of the Baſtard counter-march.

The Command is,

File-leaders ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the right, and place your ſelves before your Leader.

THis paſſing through, (or *baſtard counter-march*) is partly *Macedonian*, and partly *Lacedemonian*; for firſt with the *Macedon*, it takes the ground before the *front*, the *motion* being from the *reere* forward: it is partly *Lacedemonian*, for that they paſſe through, and place themſelves before their *Leaders*, and for that it makes ſemblance of *falling on*, or *charging* the enemy: nevertheleſſe the *Macedonian* diſclaimes it, for that it alters not his *aſpect*: The *Lacedemonian* refuſeth it, for that it takes the ground *before* the *front*, and not that *behinde* the *reere*: or with the *Chorean*, it holds affinitie. And many there be that will not allow it for a *countermarch*, for indeed the word it ſelfe will not beare it; notwithſtanding ſeeing that it hath beene long ranged amongſt them, I will not be he that ſhall diſplace it, but will paſſe forwards, to ſhew the manner of the *motion*, which is

Baſtard Counter-march.

to be performed as followeth. The *file-leaders* stand, according to the former direction, the rest of the *body*, *advance* their *armes*; the *second ranke* first passing through to the *right*, and placing themselves before the *first ranke*, the *third ranke* before the *second*; the *fourth* before the *third*, and so forwards for the rest, untill the last *ranke* (or *bringers up*) are become the *foremost*, which perfects the *motion*. It may be severally usefull, as to *skirmish* against an enemy, advancing by way of *introduction*, or upon occasion, to bring the *reere*, men to *march* in *front*, and such like. For the *reducement*, you may doe, as much to the *contrary hand*, onely for order sake, I will *reduce* it, by another like it selfe. The Command is,

File-leaders stand, the rest passe through to the right, placing your selves before your Leaders, following your bringers up.

1st. Countermarch. This *motion* may be done either to the *right* or *left*, and is nothing differing from that *last* shewne; but that, whereas the *other*, began with the *second ranke*, this contrariwise begins with the *last ranke*, (or *bringers up*) every *ranke* successively, following the *ranke*, which came from *behinde* them, untill they which were the *leaders*, are become the *last* in the *reere*. If this *countermarch* be first done, it may be reduced by any of those formerly shewn, &c.

Chap.

Chap. XLIV.

Of countermarching ranks, to maintaine ground.

The Command is.

Ranks to the right hand countermarch.

THis *Chorean counter-march of rankes, is an altering or changing of one flanke for the other, the Battalia ſtill keeping the ſame ground, onely the right flanke becomes the left, and the left, becomes the right:* The way to performe this *motion*, is as followeth: the *command* being given, then the whole *body faceth* to the *hand* named, and every man in the *outmoſt file*, to the *right*: (*files* by this *facing*, being become *rankes*) turnes down through the *Intervalle*, (or *diſtance* betweene *ranke* and *ranke*) *marching* forth right unto the part, which was the *left flanke*, with their *rankes*, *file-wiſe* following them, being come unto their ground, they *face* as before, and the *counter-march* is performed: for the *reducement*, let *rankes countermarch* to the *left*, after the ſame manner, differing onely in the hand, and they are as at firſt. Choream

Chap.

Chap. XLV.

Of Countermarching Rankes to lose Ground.

The Command is.

Rankes to the right-hand Countermarch, every man turning after his right-hand-man, on the ground he stands.

Lacedemonian.

THis *Lacedemonian-Countermarch of Rankes, is a falling on upon the left Flanke : the Motion being begun by the right* ; It leaves all the ground, the *Battalia* stood on, and takes in place therof the *ground beside the left Flanke*, turning the *Aspect* to the *left :* The manner or way, to performe this *Motion*, is as followeth: The whole *Bodie faceth* to the *right* ; and then the *right-hand-file* being *faced*, (becomes a *Ranke*) begins the *Countermarch*, turning downe the *Intervals* of the *Ranks*, (which by this *facing*, is made the *distance* between the *Files*) and so *marcheth forth-right*, beyond the *left Flanke*, every man following him that was his *right-hand-man* (but not stepping forwards one foot of ground) untill the *Countermarch* be performed. For the *reducement* of this

this *Countermarch*, do as much to the *left*, and they will be as at *first*: Or (if you please) take another of the same kind; The word of *Command*, or direction is.

Right-hand-file, face to the right, the rest passe through to the right, and place your selves before your right-hand-men.

THis *Lacedemonian Countermarch of ranks, makes a falling on upon the right Flanke*, the *Motion* being from the *left Flanke*, to the *right*, leaving all the ground whereon the *Battalia* stood, and taking in lieu thereof the ground *beside the right Flanke*. In those dayes, when *Countermarches* were more usefull for their *Discipline*, then now they are for ours; the *Lacedemonian Countermarches* were of chiefe repute, aswell amongst the *Macedonians*, as the *Spartans* and others: the way to performe this *Motion* is as followeth. The *right-hand-file faceth* to the *right*, and passeth through the *Intervals*, or spaces, to the *right*: placing themselves, before their *right-hand-men*, untill the *left-hand-file*, become the *foremost ranke*; If you doe this *Countermarch* by it selfe, then for *reducement*, first *face* them to their *Front proper*, then let the *left-hand-files*, *face* to the *left*, and do as much to the *left*; and then they will be as at *first*. Lacedemonian.

CHAP.

Chap. XLVI.

Of the Macedonian *Countermarch by Ranke.*

The Command is:

Right-hand-file face to the left, the rest passe through to the right, placing your selves behind your right-hand-men.

Macedon.

His Macedonian *Countermarch of ranks, contrary to the* Spartan, *dismarcheth from the enemy upon that Flanke where hee appeares, and presents the contrary Flanke, to receive the Charge.* It is performed after this manner. The *out-most-file* to the *right, faceth* to the *left*. The rest of the *body*, or *Battalia, faceth* to the *right*; every man passing thorough to the *right* and placing themselves, behind their *right-hand-men:* For the *reducement* of this *Countermarch*, as all the rest, there are divers, and severall wayes; but performe as much to the *left*, as you have done to the *right*, and they will be at *first:* Or if you please, this following *Bastard*

Coun-

Countermand, will do the same. The word of *Command* or direction is,

Right-hand-file stand, the rest passe through to the right, placing your selves, on the outside of your Right-hand-men.

THis passing thorough, or *Bastard Countermarch* of *Ranks*, doth alter both *ground*, and *flanke*; (still reserving the *Aspect*, without *alteration.*) It is to be performed as followeth. The out-most or *right-hand-file*, stands; the rest of the *body*, *facing* to the *right*, passe thorough to the *right*, every man placing himselfe, on the *right* side of his *right-hand-man*, and so standing euen in *Ranke*, the *Motion* still continuing, untill the *left-hand-file*, is become the *right*; the *right*, the *contrary*. If this *Countermarch* be done alone, for the *reducement*; let the *left-hand-file* stand, and do as much to the *left*, as before to the *right*; and they will be as at *first*. Bast. Count.

Chap. XLVII.

Of Countermarching Front and Reere to the middest.

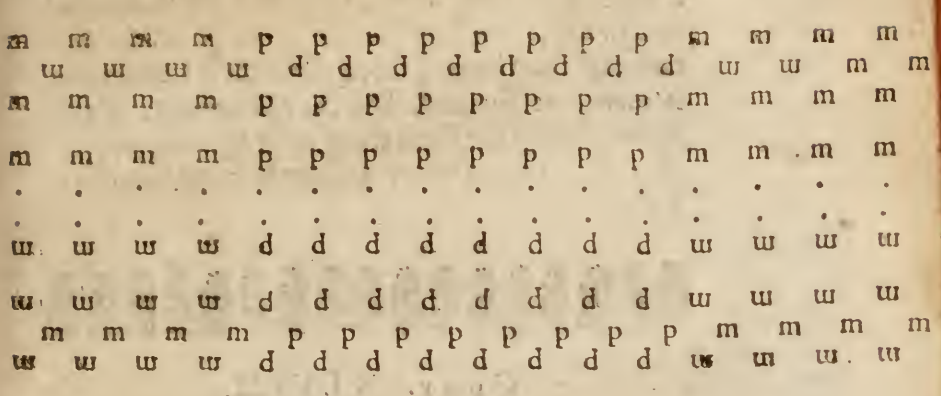
FOr the *Intire Countermarches*, I have indeavoured to expresse them, as well as I could in words, but for the *divisionall Countermarches* Of divisionall Countermarches.

ches, I intend to expresse, both in *word* and *figure*, whereby they may be the more easily apprehended by such as shall be desirous to know them: notwithstanding before I enter upon the *divisionall Countermarches*, I would willingly cleere one thing which by some will be carped at; which is, the using of the word *Middest*, instead of the word *Center*: The word *Center* (I confesse) hath been the more usuall word amongst us; and yet it is not altogether so proper to our use as the other; wherefore give me leave, without offence, to use those words, which are not only more proper, but more significant. The *Midst* of the *Battaile*, is to be understood, either from the *Front*, & *Reere*; or from *both Flanks* (or *wings*:) If betweene *Front* and *Reere*, the *Midst* must be betweene the *half-file-leaders*, and the *Reere ranke* of the *Front half-files*, extending it selfe from *Flanke* to *Flanke*: The *Midst* betweene the *Flankes*, is betweene the two *innermost files*; continuing the whole *depth*: from *Front* to *Reere*: Our *first Countermarch* shall be *Chorean*; the word of *command* or direction is.

Countermarch Front and Reere, into the midſt.

Chorean.

Front.



Reere.

This *diviſionall, chorean countermarch*, brings our *File-leaders*, and *Bringers up* together in the *midſt*, and the *ranks* that were in the *midſt* in the *Front* & *Reere*. It is a *countermarch* mayntayning ground; for every man *marcheth up*, into his *leaders* ground; before he *faceth* about to *countermarch*: The way to performe the *Motion*, is as followeth. The *command* being given to *countermarch*, either let the *commander*, or ſome other of the *Officers*, command the *half-files*, to *face about*: then the *file-leaders* ſtepping forwards, with the right legge, and *face* about to the *right*, paſſing downe the *Intervals* on the *right* hand, the reſt of the *Front-halfe-files*, following their *Leaders*, and not *turning*, untill they come to the ground, where their *Leaders* turned

Note, that for Countermarching Front and Reere into the midſt, the Front-halfe-files ever turne off to the Right, the Reere halfe files to the Left, which being timely obſerved, they will alwayes meet even in the middle of the Battaile, where to the contrary, if they turne both off to the Right, they can never doe the Counter-march but wrong.

ned down before them: The *bringers up* with the *Reere-half-files*, at the same instant turning downe their *Intervales*, on the *left hand*, the rest of their *division* following them, untill the *file-leaders* and *bringers up*, meet together in the *midst* of the *Battaile*, and then having faced all to their Leader, the *Motion* is performed. For the *reducement*, of this *figure*, doing the same thing over againe, will *reduce* it. Or any other *divisionall countermarch of File.*

Chap. XLVIII.

Of bringing Front and Reere together, into the midst, by the Bastard Countermarch.

The Command is:

File-leaders, and half-fileaders stand, the rest passe thorough to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.

Bast. Counter.

THis *Bastard Countermarch*, doth *bring the Leaders, and bringers up, together, into the midst, and saves two facings, and is quicklier performed, then the other last done: or any other in the precedent Chapters:* The way to performe

forme the *Motion*, is as followeth: The *first ranke* stands; and the *half-file-leaders* stand, then those of the *Front-half-files*, passe thorough their *Intervals* to the *right*, placing themselves before their *File-leaders*: The *second ranke* before the *first*, the *third* before the *second*, the *fourth* before the *third*; The *Reere-half-files* at the same instant, doing the like, and placing themselves, before their * *half-file-leaders*, as the other did, before their *File-leaders*: This *Motion* may be either reduced by doing the same over againe to the *contrary hand*, or else by *countermarching front and Reere* into the *midst*, or by any other of the *divisionall countermarches* of *files*. The next shal be a *Lacedemonian countermarch*, the word of *command*, or direction, is as shall be expresst in the ensuing Chapter.

* Note that as the front half-files empticth the space of ground betweene the leaders and halfe-file-leaders placing themselues in the ground before the front, so in the meane time their places are repleniſhed by the souldiers of the Reere-halfe-files which march up and supply their roomes.

K Chap.

Chap. XLIX.

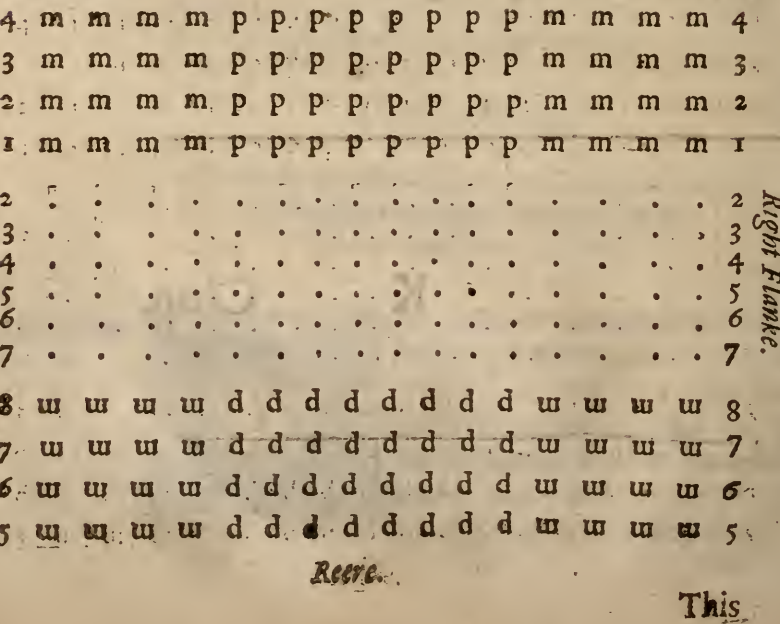
Of Countermarching to make a large Intervale between the first, and last Ranks.

The Command is,

File-leaders, and Bringers up stand, the rest passe thorough to the right, and place your selves, before your Leaders, and Bringers up.

Lacedemonian.

Front.


4 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 4
3 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 3
2 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 2
1 m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 1
2 3 4 5 6 7
Left Flanke.
Right Flanke.
8 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 8
7 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 7
6 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 6
5 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w 5

Reere.

This

THis *divisionall Lacedemonian Countermarch*, makes semblance of *falling* on, or *charging*, both to the *Front* and *Reere*, and leaves all the ground, which was occupied by the Souldiers, which stood *betweene* the *front* and *reere*, *transferring* them into the ground, *before* the *front*, and *behinde* the *reere*; the ground (or place) of their former standing, being vacant, onely demonstrated in this figure by the *pricks*. The *Motion* may be thus performed. The *Reere-halfe-files* are commanded to *face* to the *Reere*, and then the *front-halfe-files*, passe through to the *right*: placing themselves before their *Leaders*; The *second Ranke*, before the *first*; the *third*, before the *second*; the *fourth*, before the *third*; the *Reere-halfe-files* at the same instant, passing through to the *Reere*, after the same manner; and placing themselues before their *Bringers-up*. You may perceive by the *figures* of *Number*, placed on the *Flanks* of the *figure* of *battell*, both how the men stood, before the *Motion* began, as also *how* and in *what* place they stand, the *Motion* being ended: For the *reducement*, if you have not closed their *distance*, you may *face* them *about*, and so let them passe againe into their places: Or else, by doing the same *Countermarch* over againe, or to the *contrary hand*, or any such like way, will *reduce* them. This next following *Countermarch* will also *reduce* them, or this will *reduce* that. The *word* for the *Command*, or direction is, as you shall finde it placed, over the *front* of the *figure*.

If you reduce them by another Countermarch, first close their divisions.

Chap. L.

Of making a large Intervalle, betweene the first and last ranks, by the Macedonian Countermarch.

Macedonian.

THis *divisionall Macedonian Countermarch*, is little different from that, next before it, onely the other, *turned the Aspect outward, to the front, and Reere*; this *Countermarch turnes the Aspect inwards, towards the midst*. It may be usefull, if the *Commander* would shew, or publish ought, before his best Souldiers, for that it not onely leaves a large *distance*, but that it brings the best Souldiers into the *midst*, with their *Aspects* directed *inwards*: It may also serue, to *conduct* any great *personage*, crosse the length of your *battell*, whereby to shew them, the *braverie* of your Souldiers, &c. The *figure* followeth.

This

The Command is,

File-leaders face about, Bringers up ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the Right, and place your ſelues behinde your file-leaders and Bringers up.

Front.

4	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	4
3	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	3
2	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	2
1	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	d	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	ɯ	1
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
8	m	m	m	m	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	m	m	m	m	8
7	m	m	m	m	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	m	m	m	m	7
6	m	m	m	m	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	m	m	m	m	6
5	m	m	m	m	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	p	m	m	m	m	5

Left Flanke. *Right Flanke.*

Reere.

This *motion* may be thus performed: The *firſt* ranke (or *file-leaders*) *face about*, the *laſt ranke ſtands*, the *Reere-halfe-files*, *face about*, and ſo the *front-diviſion*, paſſe forwards, and place themſelues behind the *file-leaders*, the *reere-halfe-files*, behinde their *Bringers up*. The manner, you may perceive the plainer, if you note the *figures*, of *number*, which are placed, on the *flanks* of the *figure*, their *number*

Note that when the Reere halfe files face about, the laſt ranke which are the bringers up are ſtill to keep their ſtanding.

shewing the *places*, they had, from the *front*, before the *motion* began. This *figure* may be *reduced*, either by the same *word* of *command*, which produced it, or else by any of the foregoing *divisionall countermarches*. Our next, shall be a *countermarch of exchange of ground*. The *words* for *command*, or direction, are as followeth.

Chap. LI.

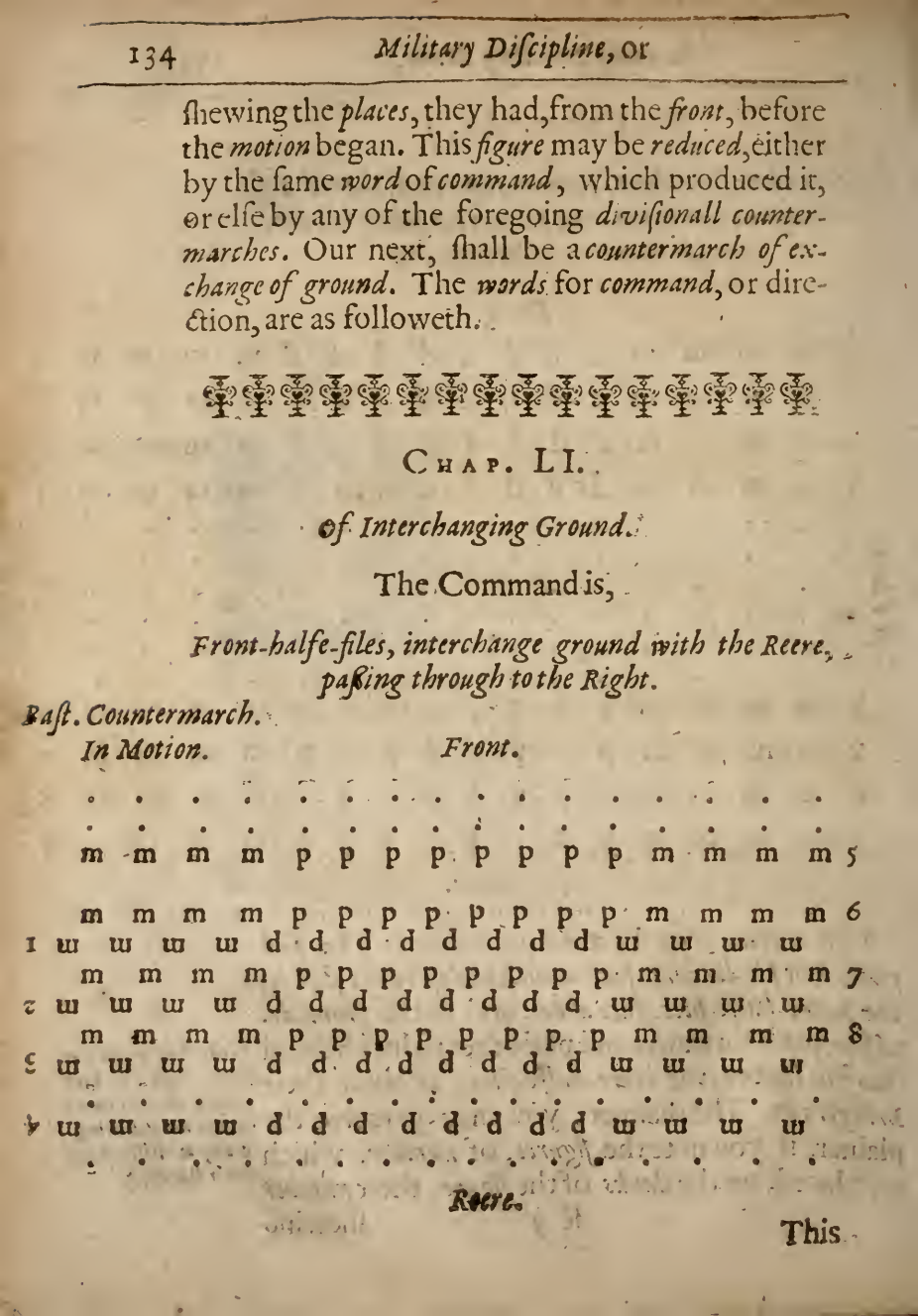
of Interchanging Ground.

The Command is,

Front-halfe-files, interchange ground with the Reere, passing through to the Right.

Rast. Countermarch.

In Motion. *Front.*


m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 5
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 6
1 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 7
2 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m 8
3 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w
4 w w w w d d d d d d d d w w w w

Reere.

This

This *Baſtard Countermarch*, may not rightly be ſaid, to be derived from any one of the particular grounds of *Countermarch*; but rather, participating of them all: And yet conſidering it, as it is to be, it is different from them all: for whereas the other *countermarches*, of *files* in *diviſion*, although they bring the *Front* and *Reere* into the *middeſt*, yet the *front-halfe-files* continue ſtill, on the ſame part, and the *Reere halfe-files* do not alter into the places of the other. But this, contrary to any other, of the *diviſionall countermarches, transferres the front-halfe-files into the ground, or place of the Reere-halfe-files; and them, into the contrary part, bringing the file-leaders, and bringers up, together into the midſt.* The way to performe this *Motion*, is as followeth. The *front-halfe-files face about*, paſſing forwards to the *right* (being led by the *bringers up*, of the *front-halfe-files*) betweene the *Intervalles* towards the *reere*: The *Reere-halfe-files* at the ſame inſtant in like manner *marching* forwards, betweene the *Intervalles* on their right hands into the *Front*, untill the *Front-diviſion*, have attained the places of the *Reere*, and they contrariwiſe, the places of the *Front*. For the *reducement* of this *countermarch*, do as much backe againe; Or if you would *reduce* it ſome other way, you may firſt make an *intire countermarch* of *files*, and then *countermarch front*, and *reere*, into the *midſt*; for under two *countermarches*, it will not be *reduced*. Now I will paſſe, to ſhew *diviſionall countermarches* of *Ranks*, or *Flanks*; The firſt ſhall be *Chorean*, as in the *Chapter* following.

Chap. LII.

Of counter-marching the flanks (or wings) into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is,

Countermarch your flanks into the midst.

Chorean.

Front.

In motion.

Left Flanke.

Right Flanke.

Reere.

His *Chorean counter-march* of the *flanks* into the *midst*, is of ordinary use, when the Commander would have the *outermost files*, to become the *innermost*: the *motion* to bee performed on the same ground,

ground, and is as followeth. The *command* being given, the *whole body faceth to the right and left, by diviſion; the outermoſt files, by this facing, becomming rankes, every man in the right hand file, being a leader in his halfe ranke file-wiſe, and ſo likewiſe in the left hand file the ſame, then they countermarch the right flanke to the right, the left flank to the left,* which you muſt alwaies obſerve to doe, and your flanquers will meet juſt in the *midſt* of your Battalia. Laſtly, having *faced* them to their *firſt front*, the *counter-march* is ended.

Note that upon the Countermarching of flanks into the midſt, the right flanke muſt alwayes obſerue to turn to the right, the left flanke to the left. For if they ſhould both turne off to the right, they wil never meet right if they turne off both to the left, it will be as bad.

To *reduce* them, they may either uſe the ſame Counter-march againe, or any of theſe following *diviſionall countermarches* of *flankes*, (unleſſe it bee that of *interchanging* of ground.) The next ſhall be *Lacedemonian*, the Command, or words of direction, are, as in the Chapter following.

Chap.

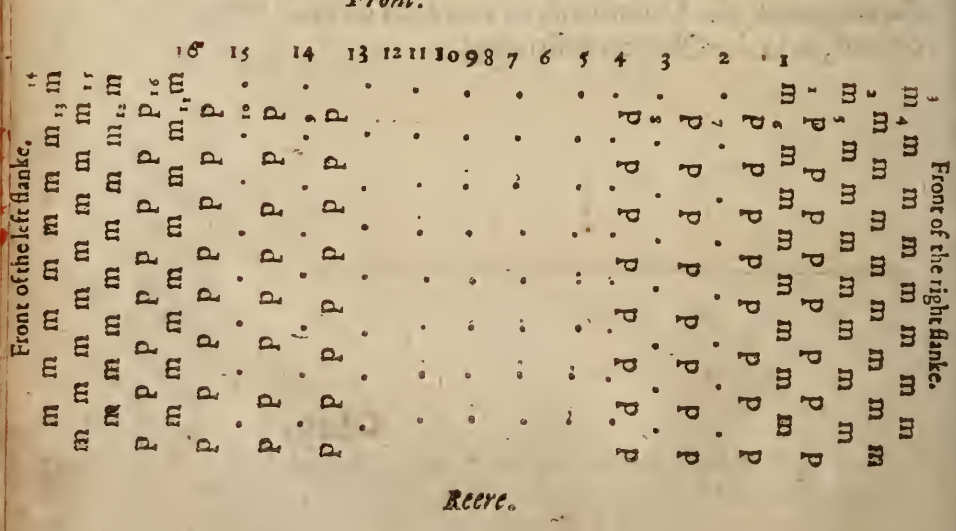
Chap. LIII.

Of Countermarching, to take the ground before the flanks.

The Command is,

The outermost file of each flanke, face outward, the rest passe through to the right and left, placing your selves before your out-side men.

ædemonian.



This

THis *Lacedemonian Countermarch of halfe ranks or flanks, makes semblance of charging on, upon both flanks, but leaves a waſt diſtance of ground, unoccupied betweene the two outmoſt-files, or midſt of the battell.* The way to performe this *Motion* is as followeth. The *right-hand-file faceth* to the *right*, the *left-hand-file* to the *left*; the reſt of the *body faceth* to the *right* and *left*, the *right-flanke* paſſing through to the *right*, and placing themſelues, before their *right-hand-men*. The *ſecond file* from the *right*, begins the *Motion* on the *right-flanke*; the *left-flanke* in like manner, paſſing through to the *left*, and placing themſelues before their *left-hand-men*; the *ſecond file* accounting, from the *left*, begins the *Motion* on the *left-flanke*: But you muſt note, that the *files* become *ranks* with the *facing*.

For the *reducement* of this *figure*, if you will firſt *face* them, to their *proper front*, you may then command *the two inmoſt-files ſtand, the reſt paſſe through to the right, and left inward, and take their places*: Or if you pleaſe, make uſe, either of a *Chorean*, or a *Macedonian Countermarch* of *Ranks* by *diviſion*, and with a *facing*, and *cloſing* their *diviſions*, they will be perfectly reduced.

CHAP.

Chap. LIV.

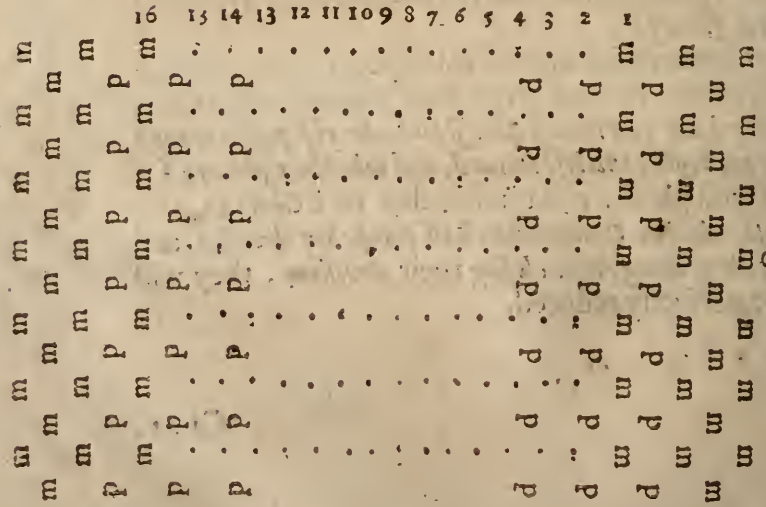
Of Countermarching to take the ground on the outside of the Flanks, and to direct their Aspects inwards.

The Command is,

Macedonian.

The outmost file of each Flanke face inward, the rest passe through to the Right, and Left, placing your selues behinde your outside men.

Front.



This

His *Macedonian Countermarch, differeth nothing from that last shewed, but onely in the turning of the aspect inwards: whereas the other, directed their aspect outwards:* The *Motion* is thus performed: The *outermost-files*, of each *Flanke, face inward:* the rest of the *body, face* to the *right*, and *left, outward*; those of the *right flanke*, passing through to the *right*, and placing themselues behinde their *right-hand-men*. Those of the *left flanke* passing through to the *left*, and placing themselues behinde their *left-hand-men*: The *Motion* is begun, by the *second file*, from each *flank*. I might here shew these *Countermarches*, beginning their *Motion* from their *middlemost-files*; But I am willingly silent, hoping that these, may suffice to the courteous, not much forcing my selfe to give satisfaction to the curious. For the *reducement* of this *Countermarch*, having *faced* them to their *first front*, you may if you please, command *the two innermost files to face outward, the rest passe through to the right, and left inward: placing themselues behinde their right, and left-hand-men*; which being done, the whole *body* will stand *faced* to the *right*, and *left outward*; Then being *faced* to their *Leader*, they are *reduced*. If you would *reduce* it, by some other way, you may make use, either of the *Countermarch*, which is next before, or of that, which next followeth: Or of any other *divisionall Countermarch* of *Ranks*; (which doth not *interchange ground*). Our next two which follow, will be *Bastard Countermarches*, with the which, we will conclude this our *fourth branch of Discipline*.

CHAP.

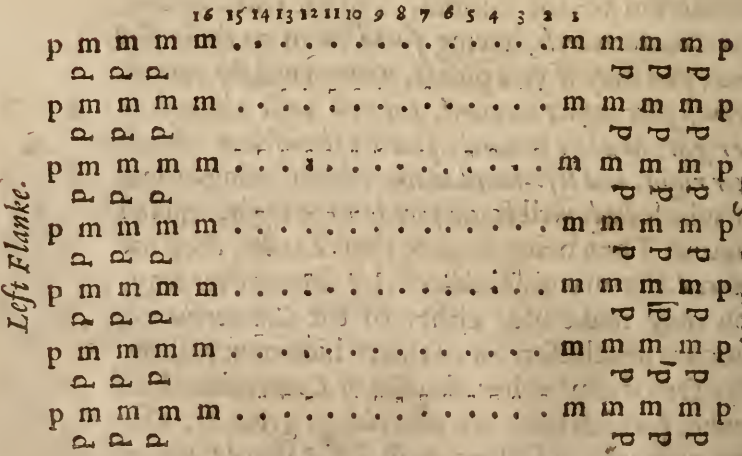
Chap. LV.

Of taking the ground on the outside of the flanks; not altering the Aspects.

The Command is,

The outmost-file of each Flanke stand, the rest passe through to the right, and left, and place your selues on the outside, of your right and left-hand-men.

Front.



Reere.

This

THis *Diviſionall baſtard countermarch*, produceth the ſame effect, which the other two next before it wrought; onely *differing* in the *Aſpect*: for the *Lacedemonian*, turned the *Aſpect outward*: The *Macedonian*, turned the *Aſpect inward*; And this, keeps the *Aſpect* ſtill directed the ſame way. He that knows every way, may when time ſerveth, make uſe of thoſe wayes, which are moſt neceſſarie and ſutable to his preſent occaſion: The Proverbe ſaith, *Knowledge is no burthen.* The way to performe this Countermarch is as followeth (according to the *Command*) the *outmoſt-file* of each *flanke ſtands*; the reſt of the *Body faceth* to the *right* and *left outward*, the *right flanke* paſſing through to the *right*, the *left flanke* to the *left*; thoſe of the *right-flanke*, placing themſelues, on the *outſide* of their *right-hand-men*: in like manner, thoſe on the *left flanke*, placing themſelues, on the *outſide* of their *left-hand-men*.

It may be *reduced*, either by any, of the foregoing *diviſionall Countermarches of Ranks*, or elſe being *faced*, to any of the *flanks*, then the *rankes* become *files*. And by *diviſionall Countermarches* of *files*, you may *reduce*, *diviſionall Countermarches of Ranks*, or by *ranks*, *files*; onely you muſt obſerve ſome *facings*: Yet for this *figure*, if you pleaſe, *Command the two innermoſt-files, ſtand; the reſt, face to the right, and left inward, and ſo march into their places.* The next ſhall be a *Countermarch*, of *interchanging of Flanks*.

CHAP.

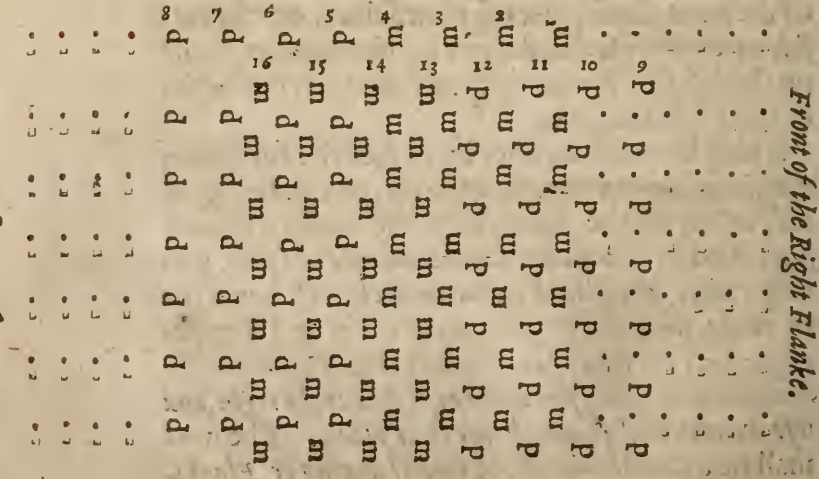
Chap. LVI.

Of Interchanging Ground by the Flanks, and bringing the innermost-files of Pikes, to become the outmost-ranks.

The Command is,

Interchange Flanks.

Front.



Reere.

This

THis *exchanging of Flanks*, or *Baſtard Countermarch*, is differing from all the other *diviſionall Countermarches* of *Ranks*; for this *transferres* the *right-flanke* into the place of the *left*, and the *left-flanke*, into the place of the *right*. It is very apt, for to receive a ſudden *charge*, from the *horſe*, for as ſoone as they ſhall be commanded to *interchange* their *flanks*, they *face* to the *right*, and *left inward*, and then the *innermoſt-files* of the *pikes* begin the *Motion*; the reſt of each *flanke* following orderly *file-wiſe*, the *pikes porting* ſo ſoone as they begin to *move*, and *charge* as they ſee occaſion: If need be, the *pikes* may *charge* at the *foot*, the *Muſkettiers* giving *fire*, over their *ſhoulders*: If any object, that the *Pikes* have too large a *diſtance*, they may cloſe at their owne pleaſures, as ſoone as they have paſt through.

Note that if you pleaſe, you may paſſe the Pikes alone through, and let the Muskettiers ſtand. But then there will be a large diſtance betweene the Muskettiers in the midſt.

For the *reducement*, you may, if you pleaſe, *interchange ground* againe: nevertheleſſe if you would reduce it, by ſome other way, *Countermarch* your *Flanks* into the *midſt*, and then an *intire Countermarch*, either of *ranke*, or *file*, will *reduce* them.

I might have further enlarged my ſelfe, upon this ſubject, both in *Command*, and *Figure*; but it may be, that ſome will finde fault with theſe, which I have already penned, concluding them for *nicities*, and for no ſervice; becauſe they cannot preſently apprehend, for what uſe, or ſervice they may be fit. Notwithſtanding I would intreat ſuch (if any ſuch happen to be my overlookers) that they would ſuſpend their cenſures, untill they have fully enformed

formed their judgements. Yet thus much I will conclude with them, that *Countermarches* might the best be spared, of all the *Motions*, as being least beneficiall, to this our *Moderne discipline*. And yet to very good use, many of them might serve, if our Souldiers were well practised in them. Nevertheless such is the wilfull stupidity of the times, that many good, and usefull things are disreputed, and accounted of no use, because the Souldier wanting skill, cannot performe them, as they ought: which would the *Officers* take more paines, by often instructing their *Souldiers*, the hardest *Motions* would become facile and easie. And to say truth, the greatest fault is, want of skill in those, which should give instruction to others; and yet they will not sticke, to carpe at such, as shall shew more, than they, concluding such things for superfluous, and improper, which they themselves do not rightly understand: But lest I be taxed for digression, I will conclude this *branch* of *Discipline* with these few lines following.

Some burthened are with more command than skill,
Which had they power suting to their minde,
You then should see Reason inthral'd to will,
Nor any 'bove their knowledge should you finde:
For rather than they'le study to learne better,
They wish all wanting; none to know a letter.

So be there many Officers in Bands
That neither know themselves, nor care for those
That skilfull are in Postures, and Commands;

Nor

Nor are they carefull which end formoſt goes.
They thinke, to dice, to drabbe, to ſweare, and ſwill,
Is skill enough for them: Learne more that will.

And if that any man more forward be
For to inſtruct the Souldier (as is fit)
With ſuch a fellow they cannot agree;
He is vaine-glorious, ſtrives to ſhew his wit.
They will be ſure to quarrell and deprave him,
And in their cups perhaps they'll ———

Such honeſt hearts as ſpend both meanes and time
To practiſe others for their Countries good,
Why ſhould this good be counted for a crime,
To thoſe that for their Prince would ſpend their bloud?
That Countrey ſure will beſt be kept from harmes
Whoſe Subjects pleaſure take to practiſe Armes.

But on this Subject I'le no longer bide,
Of Countermarches. Here I'le take my leave,
To ſhew the Wheelings, next I ſhall provide,
Which follows next of courſe, as I conceive.
And though with verſe my Countermarches cloſe,
Beginning Wheelings, I returne to Proſe.

Chap. LVII.

Of wheelings, their kindes, and uses with their severall words of Command.

The next Branch springing from this root of *Discipline*, are *wheelings*; which are of *two kindes*, *viz.* wheelings *Angular*, and *wheelings on the Center*, as also they are to be conceived, in manner of *action*, either *intire* or *divisionall*: the use of *intire wheelings*, is to *turne the aspect of the front proper, to the right, to the left, or reere; either for the gaining of the Winde, Sunne, or some such like advantage*; or to *confront the enemy with their best Souldiers*. Most of the *divisionall wheelings* being indeed more properly *doublings*, either *extending* the *length*, or *depth* of the Battell: notwithstanding, because I wold not be taxed with *innovation*, or *alteration*, I have, according unto the usuall received way, placed them amongst the *wheelings*; and now I will shew their words of command, or direction. But before I enter upon them, give me leave to lay downe an *observation* or two, for the better instruction of the Souldiers in their *wheelings*: The first is, *That before you enter upon your wheelings, you close both Rankes and Files to their order, which is three foot, both in ranke and file*:

Note that the distance for wheelings ought to be three foot betweene Ranke and File.

The

The other, *that upon all wheelings, you must be sure, to observe your leader, and follow him, keeping your due distance; your Muskettiers being all, either poyzed, or shouldered: your Pikes ought to be advanced.* The words of Commands, are as followeth.

Note that upō the exercise of the motions whether it be distance, facings, doublings, Counter-marches, or wheelings, the Muskettiers ought to be all upon one and the same posture either poised or shouldered: the pikes in like manner either shouldered or advanced.

Wheele your Battell to the
- Right, Left, Right Left } about,
- Right, Left, Right Left } about } on the same ground;

Wheele
- off your Front by division.
- your Front inward to the Reere.
- Front and Reere into the { Right Left } flanke.
- your flankes into the { Front, Reere,
- both flankes into the front and reere.
- your front and reere into both flanks.

Observe that the first foure *wheelings* are *angular*, the next foure are *wheelings on the center*, or more properly, on the midst of the *front*. But all the first eight be *intire*, the latter eight, are all *divisionall*. You may also observe, that every following *wheeling* is a *reducement* unto that, which is placed next before it, and the *wheeling* next before, may reduce that next following; as to *wheele* your *flankes* into the *front*, if you *wheele* your *flanks* into the *reere*, it is *reduced*; or to *wheele front* and *reere* into both *flankes*; if you *wheele* both *flankes* into the

front and *reere*, they are likewise *reduced*, as before.

For the last eight *wheelings*, which are *divisionall*, I will pricke for each of them, his *figure*. As for the first eight, which are *intire*, I conceive them so easie to be understood, that I may spare the labour; yet I will endeavour to expresse them as well as I can in words: and first I will beginne with the *wheelings anguler*, and then with the rest, according to their places: and therefore note, that when you are Commanded, to *wheele* to the *right* or *left*, &c. and no other command added, it is to be understood, an *anguler wheeling*, and so to be performed.

Chap. LVIII.

Of wheelings Anguler.

The Command is,

Wheele your battell to the right.

1 THis is an *angular wheeling*, which *transferres* the *aspect* or *countenance* of the *front proper*, into that part which was the *right flanke*: It also removes the Battalia from the *ground* whereon formerly it stood, and placeth it on that part, before the *front*; the *hindge* or *Axell tree* of the *motion*, is the *right corner man*, or *right hand file-leader*, who

who with a ſmall *motion*, moveth to the *right*, every man, the more his place is remote from the right Angle, the more ſwift muſt be his *motion*; becauſe his *arch-quadrant*, or *ſemi-circle*, is larger in proportion: wherefore it muſt be the diſcretion of the *Officers*, ſo to inſtruct their *Souldiers*, that when they *wheele* to any *hand*, they may ſo moderate their *motion*, that they on the contrary flanke, be not forced to runne, but ſo orderly to containe themſelves, that they may ſtill preſerve an orderly and even *front*. For the *reducement*, wheele your Battaile to the *left*, in the like manner, as it was wheeled to the *right*; nevertheleſſe you muſt then note, that it will not bring you backe into the ſame ground you formerly ſtood on; for it hath *advanced* you, the length of your Battalia, before the place of your *firſt front*. But if you would be reduced into the ſame place, or plot you firſt ſtood on; then face your Battaile to the *right*, and being ſo *faced*, *wheele* your Battaile to the *left*, which being performed, *face* to the *left*, and then they are compleatly *reduced*, both for *aſpect* and place. The next Command is,

Note the direction for angular wheelings.

2

Wheele your Battaile to the right about.

This is alſo an *anguler wheeling*, and *tranſferres* the *aſpect* of the *front*, *proper*, towards the *reere*: It is to be performed in the ſame manner, as the *wheeling* to the *right* was; onely the *motion* is twice ſo much: Wherefore there ought to be the more care had, that ſo the *motion* may be orderly perfor-

3

Note that wheeling to the right about will not be reduced by wheeling back againe to the left about just into the same ground, if the wheeling be Anguler; but will be twise the length of the battell removed to the right of your former standing.

med: by so much as every man is nearer, or further off, from the *right corner* man, by so much the more *swifter* or *slower* must he continue his *motion*, that so he may be sure, to keepe still, even in *ranke* with his *right hand man*. This *motion* being thus performed, your Battaile will be removed from its former *station*, taking in lieu thereof, the ground *Diagonally* opposite in the *right Angle*.

To *reduce* these to their former *aspect*; *wheele* your Battell to the *left about*, notwithstanding the ground you formerly did possesse, will be twice the length of your Battaile to the *left*, of your *left flanke*, if you would *reduce* them, as well to their first *ground*, as their first *aspect*; face them to the *right*, and then *wheele* them to the *left about*, which being done, face them to the *left*, and they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first.

4.

Chap. LIX.

Of wheeling on the Center.

The Command is;

Wheele your Battell to the right, on the same ground.

5 THis *wheeling*, is by some called *a wheeling on the Center*: by others, *a wheeling on the same ground*. I cannot absolutely maintain it to be either, for that it onely wheeles about the *midst of the first ranke*. Neither may it rightly bee tur-

termed a *wheeling on the same ground,* because it loseth ¼. of the *ground* it formerly stood upon. This *wheeling* is quicker performed, then the *angular wheelings:* and may be done in farre lesse ground. For the *left flanke advanceth* forward, still wheeling to the *right,* the *right flanke* contrariwise, *facing* to the *left*; and so falling backward. If you have an odde file, then the *middle file-leader* must be the *center* or *axelltree* of the *motion,* if you have an even number of files, then the *middlemost file-leader* from the *left.* But if your *wheeling* be to the *left,* then the contrary. This by some is called the *Prince of Oranges wheeling.* For the *reducement, wheele* your Battell to the *left,* on the same ground: and they are *reduced* as at first. Our next Command is, to 6

Wheele your Battaile to the right about, on the same ground.

This *wheeling* is also a *wheeling on the center,* or *midst of the front:* and *transfers* the aspect of the *front proper,* towards the *reere,* removing the Battaile from the ground whereon it formerly stood, and placing it on the ground before the *front.* It is performed after the same manner, as the last: onely the *motion* is double so much as the other. In this *motion,* on the *left flanke,* every man is to observe his *right hand man*; and the *right flanke* must keepe even and straight after their *left hand man*, which become their *leaders file-wise*, untill they have attained their *ground*: after which, they *face* as before: making an *even front.* 7

For

For the *reducement, wheele* your Battaile to the *left about*, upon the ſame ground; and they will be *reduced* as at firſt. I will next ſhew the *diviſionall wheelings*, and intend to giue to each of them his *figure:* whereby they may appeare the more eaſie to ſuch as doe not yet rightly underſtand them. The firſt ſhall be a *wheeling off by diviſion:* as in the next Chapter.

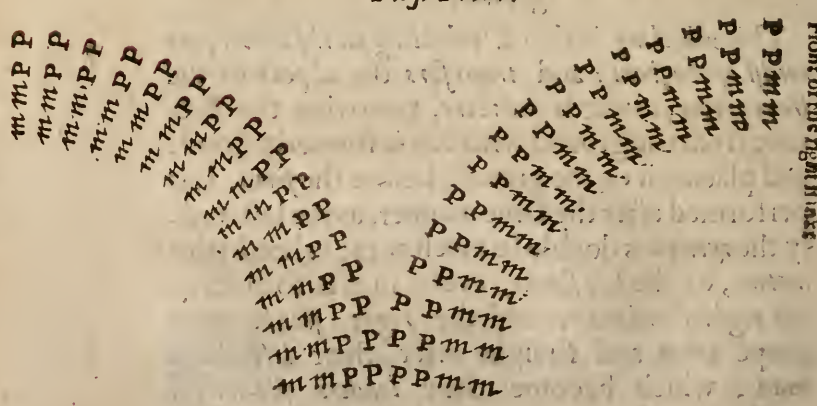
Chap. LX.

Of wheeling off, by diviſion.

The Command is,

Wheele off your front by diviſion.

Firſt Front.



This

THis *wheeling off by diuision* in greater *bodies*, may be vſefull to meete ſeverall *enemies* at one and the ſame time, with the *front* of your Battalia: and ſo conſequently with your beſt *Souldiers*. But if you will *wheele off your Battaile by diuiſion*, and *ioyne* them againe when they be in the *recre*; then it brings all your *Muskettiers* from the *flankes* to the *midſt* of your Battalia: and your *Pikes* on the *out ſide* or *flankes*. If any queſtion the *depth* of the *number* of this *figure*, I have *doubled files* to make the *figure* more perfect. The way to perform this *motion*, is eaſie; for all the *file-leaders* of the *right flanke*, *wheele about to the right*: the reſt of each *file* following their *leaders*: the *file-leaders* alſo of the *left flanke*, *wheeling about* to the left, in the ſame manner; and then *joyne* or *cloſe* their *diuiſions*. This being done, if you would then *reduce* them, *wheele* them off againe by *diuiſion*; after the ſame manner; and they will be as before. But if you would doe it ſome other way, make uſe of this *wheeling* next following: which will alſo bring them as they were. The word of Command or direction followeth, as in the next Chapter.

Chap.

Chap. LXI.

Of wheeling the Front inward, towards the Reere.

The Command is,

Wheele your Front inward to the Reere.

The Front.

THis *divisionall wheeling of your front inwards to the reere*, is here placed as a *reducement* unto the other foregoing wheelings: and so it brings the Muskettiers to the *flankes* againe. But if you will doe it, the *Company* being first *reduced*; then it brings the *Pikes* to the *flankes*. Some say it may be good, if you be annoyd with *horse* in the *Reere*, upon a *march*; and that you have gained some

ſome ſide of a hill or other place of advantage: then to *wheele* your *front inward* to the *Reere*, to the *enemy* will make ſhew of *disbandoning* or *flight*. But contrariwiſe, you *march* toward him with a ſettled and orderly *body*: your *Muskettiers* being all in the *midſt*, and ſo *firing* upon their *enemy*: the *Pikes* being their *flankers*, thereby defending the *ſhot* from the fury of the *horſe*. This *motion* will hardly be well done, if your *body* hold too large an extenſion of length. But at what depth ſoever, it is eaſie. The *motion* is to be performed as followeth. The *right hand file-leader*, with all the *leaders* of the *right flanke*, advance forwards, and ſo *wheele* about to the *left*: every *file* ſtill keeping *cloſe* to their *right hand file*. The *left hand file-leader*, likewiſe, with all the *leaders* of the *left flanke*, *advance* forwards, and *wheele about* to the *right*: every *file* of the *left flanke*, *cloſing* cloſe to the *left*. Thus the *outmoſt files* of each *flanke*, will *meete* and become the *innermoſt*: the *front* falling *perpendicularly* to the *reere*. For the *reducement* of this *figure*, you may if you pleaſe, either *wheele* them off to the *right* and *left*, by *diviſion*: or elſe wheele your *front inward* againe to the *reere*. Theſe two laſt *wheelings*, have beene demonſtrated with their *files* doubled: whereby the *figures* might be the more perfect, but with men, it would have beene needleſſe: wherefore *double rankes* to the contrary *hand*, and they will be as at the firſt.

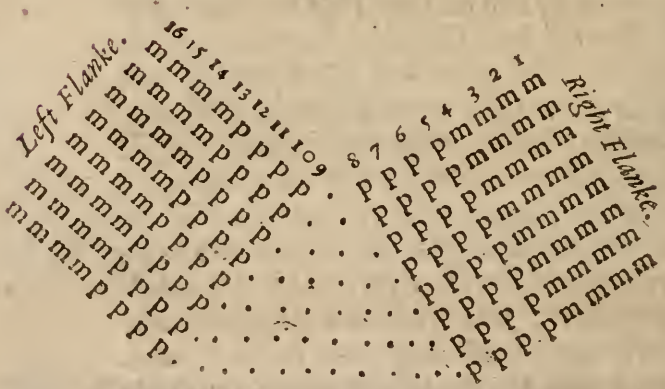
CHAP.

Chap. LXII.

Of bringing the Flanks into the Front of the Battell.

The Command is,

Wheele your Flanks into the Front.



Wheele your { Flanks, Wings, Front, Front, Reere } into the { Front, Front, Battell, Midst, Center, Flanks. }

THis *diviſionall wheeling of the Flanks into the Front*, is, properly, a *doubling* performed by *wheeling*. It brings all your *Muskettiers*, from the *flankes* into the *front*. So that whereas this *bodie*, before, could do execution, but with 8. *Muskettiers* at once; by this *Motion* they may powre on 16. *ſhot* together. If they were *deeper* before the *Motion* began, then it would bring the more hands to imployment. If upon ſome *paſſe*, you ſhould be chaſed in the *Reere* by *horſe*; by this *motion* of *wheeling* your *flanks* into the *front*, you not onely ſecure your *Muskettiers*, but alſo *barricado up* the paſſe with your *pikes*; if it be not above fifty foot over. Some call this, a *wheeling on the center*: becauſe they *wheele about* the *middle-men* of the *front*. But I rather conceive it an *angular*; becauſe upon the firſt *Motion* of *dividing*, every *diviſion wheeleth about* his owne *angle*, untill the *outmoſt-file-leaders* of each *flanke*, meet together in the *midſt*. You may perceive how, by the *figures* of *number*, where the *figure* 1. meets the *number* 16: 2 with 15, 3 with 14. and ſo for all the reſt. Then being faced to their *leader*, every two *files* that met being now joyned, make one *ranke*. There muſt be the like *order* and decorum kept, in the *motion* of *wheeling* each *flanke*: as I ſhewed in the inſtruction of *intire angular wheelings*. For *reducement* of this *Motion*, *wheele your flanks into the Reere*. Or elſe foure times the ſame, as I have ſeene ſome do: although ſomewhat the further

ther way about. Divers men are diversly opinionated; concerning the best *word* of *Command* or direction, for this *Motion*. These I have known used which I have placed in the *Margent*, by the *figure*. And if any man like one better then the other, be it at his owne choice, either to use or refuse, while I passe to shew the next *wheeling*.

CHAP.

Chap. LXIII.

Of wheeling the Reere into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is,

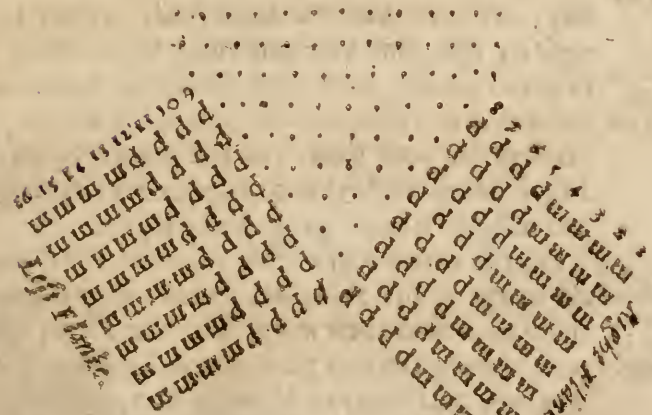
Wheele your Flanks into the Reere.

The Direction is,

Face all about to the Right.

First Front.

Wheele your { Flanks / Wings / Reere / Reere / Reere / Front } into the { Reere, Reere, Battell, Midst, Center, Flanks. }



Vpon al wheelings, you must obserue to follow your leaders, which must be understood, aswell of those which become leaders accidētally (by reason of facings) as of those which be the *first* and *proper leaders*. As in this *wheeling* (for example) where the *Bringers up* are become the leaders of the *Motion*.

THis *diuisionall wheeling* of the *Flanks* into the *Reere*, is also a *doubling*, and performed as the other. And whatsoever might be said, in the behalfe of the *wheeling* of the *front* into the *middest*; the same may be also spoken, concerning the *wheeling* of the *Reere* into the *middest*. For this *wheeling*, brings your two *outmost-files* to be the *first ranke*; the *Bringers up* of the *right* and *left-hand-files*, meeting together: the *bringers up* of the *left flanke*, meeting *face* to *face* with the *Bringers up* of the *left-flanke*. And so being *faced* to their *leader*, they which before were complete *files*, are now become *halfe-ranks*: either to the *right* or *left*. But you must note, that before you begin to *wheele*, you must *face* your *body about* to the *Reere*: and then the *action* will be all one, as if you *wheeled* your *flanks* into the *front*. Wherefore I shall not need further to explaine it: having spoken fully to it in the precedent *Chapter*.

Note that the two *middlemost bringers up* are the *Hinges* of this *wheeling*.

For the *reducement* of this *wheeling*, the *Commander* being at his *Front accidentall*, may command them to *wheele* their *wings* into the *Reere*, and so passe through to that part, where his *proper file-leaders* are: and then *face* them to him, and they are *reduced*. Or else, when he hath past through to the *reere*, and *faced* his *Company* to him; then his *pikes* being formost, let him *wheele* his *flanks* into the *front*, who being *faced* to their *leader*; they are *reduced*. For this *motion*, there are also divers and severall

verall *words* of *Command*. And becauſe it may be, that ſome will better approve of ſome of the other *words* of *Command*, then of this that I have made uſe of: therefore I have placed others in in the margent, That ſo any that will, may take their choice: while I paſſe to ſhew the next *wheeling*. Whoſe *word* of *Command* and direction, you ſhall finde over the *figure* of the next *Chapter*.

Chap. LXIIII.

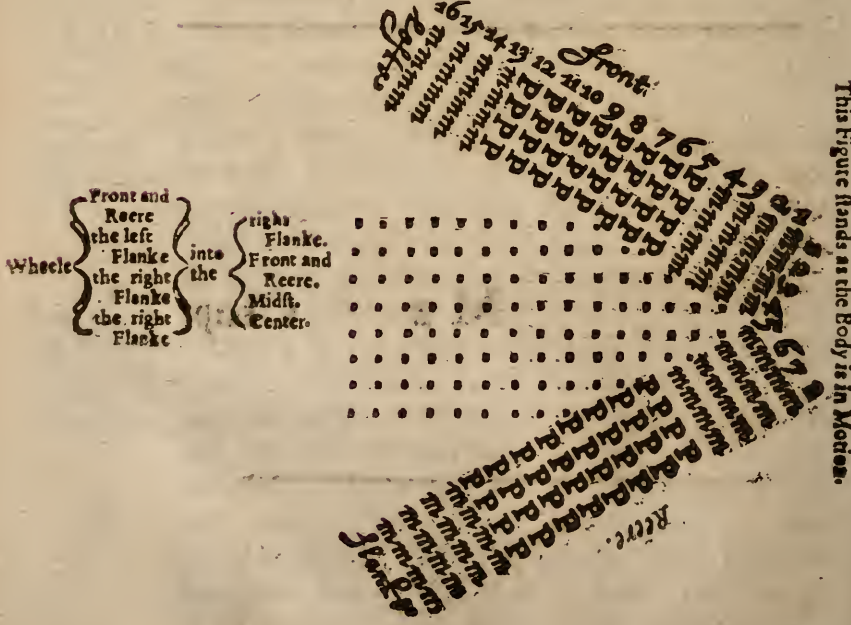
Of wheeling the right flanke, into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is,

Wheele Front and Reere, into the right Flanke.

The Direction is,

Face all to the right.



This

THis *divisionall wheeling* of the *Front* and *Reere*, into the *right-flanke*; doth *quadruple* the *depth*: as may appeare by this *figure*, which before the *Motion* began, contained but *eight* in *depth*: But this *wheeling* being perfected, makes them 32. namely, if you direct the *Aspect* of the *Bodie*, either to the *right* or *left*; after the *Motion* is ended. If you obserue this *wheeling*, it doth divide the *Muskettiers* on the *left-flanke*: the one *halfe* of them, *wheeling* to the *Front*; the other *halfe*, to the Reere: all the *Muskettiers* of the *right-flanke*, *wheeling* together into the *middest*. The *pikes* are likewise divided; those that were the *Front-halfe-files*, are in the *middest* of the *Front-division* of *Muskettiers*; and those which were the *Reere-division* of *pikes*, are in the *middest* of the *reere-division* of *Muskettiers*. This *wheeling* may be to singular good use, for the making of some *formes* of *Battell*. But I forbeare now to treat concerning *figures* and *formes* of *Battell*, reserving them to be spoken of in their due places: and come now to shew the way how to performe the *Motion*. The *Command* therefore being given, to *wheele Front* and *Reere* into the *right-flanke*, then the first thing the *Souldiers* are to do, is to *face* to the *right*. That done, they *wheele* together about the fourth and fift men in the *right-hand-file*: which is the *halfe-file-leader* to the *front*, and *halfe-file-leader* to the *reere*. You may easily perceive how, by the figure: where the *Reere-division wheeleth* to the *left*; and the *front-division*, to the *right*: untill the *bringer-up* of the *right-hand-file*, meets in the *midst*

Note, that if the *length* of your *Battell* be double the *number* of your *depth*; as in this figure then this *wheeling* of *front* and *reere* into the *right* or *left-flanke*, doth *quadruple* their former *depth*. If the *number* were *equall*, in *length* and *depth*; then by this *wheeling*, they would be but *doubled*. If the *number* of your *length*, exceed more then *double* your *depth*, by so much the more, will the *extension* of the *depth* be, beyond *quadruple*, &c.

with his *file-leader:* the *second*, with the *seventh*; the *third*, with the *sixth*; the *fourth*, with the *fift*. &c.

For the *reducement* of this *figure* of *Wheeling*, there are many wayes: according as the *Body* may be *faced*. But first conceive, as if they stand *faced* the same way as they were before this *Motion* began. And then the *wheeling* of *front* and *reere* into the *left-flanke* will *reduce* them; when they are *faced* to their *leader*. Or if you will, *face* them that way which they *wheeled* in the *Motion*; which was to the *right:* then *wheele* your *flanke* into the *reere*; when being *faced* to their *proper front*, they are *reduced*. And so, in like manner, should you *face* them to some other part; they might be otherwayes *reduced*. The next *wheeling* will be the same to the *left*, as this is, to the *right:* where notwithstanding that the *Motion* be all one, yet it shall differ in the *placing* of the *men*. For before I begin the *wheeling*, I will passe through all the *Muskettiers*, from the *left flanke* to the *right:* by which meanes the *Body* will stand, as appeareth by the *square figure* following. From whence I will begin the next *wheeling*.

CHAP.

Chap. LXV.

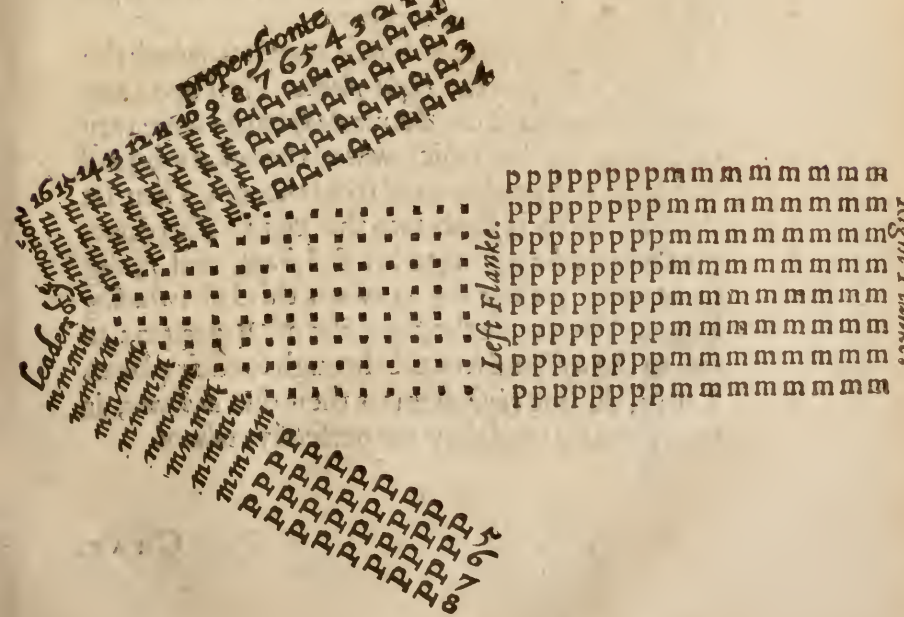
Of wheeling the left Flanke, into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is,

Wheele Front and Reere, into the left Flanke.

The Direction is,

Face all to the Left.



THis *divisionall wheeling*, of the *Front* and *Reere* into the *left-flanke*, is, in like manner, a *doubling of the depth*. For the nature of the *Motion*, it is altogether like unto the *wheeling* next before: differing onely in the *flanke*; and after that the *body* is *faced* to the *left*, the *wheeling* is to be performed, as *wheeling* the *flanks* into the *front*. But by reason that before the *Motion* began, all the *Muskettiers* were on the *right-flanke*: by this *wheeling*, they are brought to the *front* and *reere*. For the *Aspect* being directed the same way, it was before the *Command* was given, the *depth* will be 32, as in the other *figure*.

For *reducement*, the ordinary way is to *wheele* the *front* and *reere* into the *right-flanke*. Or if upon any occasion, you have *faced* your *Body* to the same way they have *wheeled* (which was to the *left-flanke*) and would give your *Command* from thence; Then let them *wheele* their *flanks* into the *Reere*. This done, the *Commander* passing to his *first front*, and *facing* them to him: they are as when this last *wheeling* began. Then cause the *foure files* of *Muskettiers*, to *face* to the *left*; and to passe through to their places. Lastly, do but *close* them to their due *distance*, in *ranke*, and *file*: and they are perfectly *reduced*.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXVI.

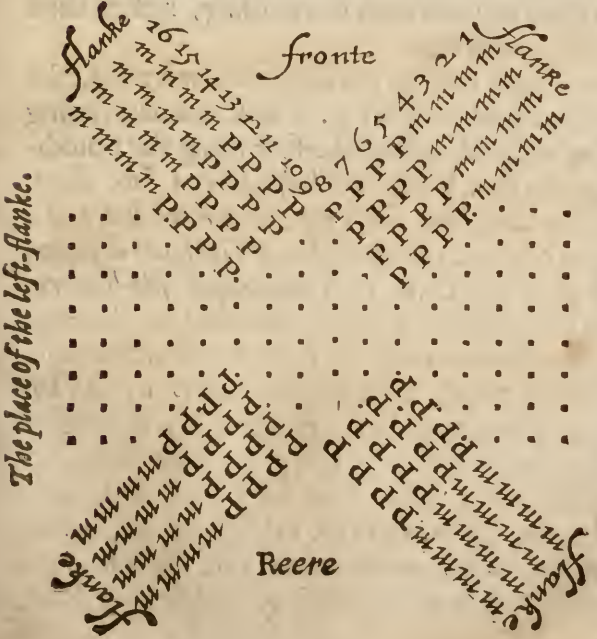
Of wheeling Front and Reere, into the midst of the Battell.

The Command is,

Wheele both Flanks into the Front and Reere.

The Direction is,

Halfe-files, face about to the Reere.



This

THis *divisionall wheeling* of both *flanks* into the *front* and *reere*; doth *double* the *depth*: making them from 8 deepe, 16. It doth likewise transferre the *Musketteers*, from the *flanks* into the *front* and *reere*: making a division between the *front halfe files*, and *reere halfe files*. So that of one *body*, *flankt* with *Muskettiers*, it maketh two, each having their *Muskettiers* in *front*.

This *figure*, (as most others, as well *facings*, *doublings*, *counter-marches* and *wheelings*) is here set forth as the *motion* of each presents it selfe in the *execution*; few of them being shewne, as they be when they are *executed*. And I conceive it the better way, as well for expression, as apprehension: to shew the worke as it is in *doing*, rather then absolutely *performed*.

For the way how to performe this *wheeling*, take these directions following. The Command being first given, (as aforesaid) the first thing the Souldiers have to doe, is for the *halfe-files* to *face about*, and then the *front halfe files*, and *reere halfe files* *wheele* at one and the same time: The *front division*, *wheeling* about their two *innermost file-leaders*, which are figured with the *numbers* of 8 and 9. untill the *file-leaders* of the *right flanke* meete together in the midst, with the *file-leaders* of the *left flanke*: as you may easily perceive by the figure shewing the motion; the rest of their divisions, orderly following them. The *halfe-files*, also being *faced* about; the *bringers up*, in like manner, *wheele* together: being now the leaders of the *motion*, in the *reere*, as you may perceive. This being done,

if

if you pleaſe you may *face* them all to their *leader*, (whom ſuppoſe to be at the *place* of his firſt *front*) and then command them to cloſe their *diviſions*: which being performed, all your *file-leaders* are in the two *innermoſt files* of the *front diviſion, file-wiſe*, and all the *Bringers up*, in the *reere diviſion* of the ſame *files*.

For the *reducement* of this figure, if you will, *face* them to either of the *flankes*, and command them to *wheele* both *flanks* into the *front* and *reere*, when *facing* them againe to their proper *front*, and cloſing their *diviſion*, they will be as at firſt. But if you would make uſe of ſome other *wheeling*, to *reduce* it, then take this in the following *Chapter*.

CHAP.

Chap. LXVII.

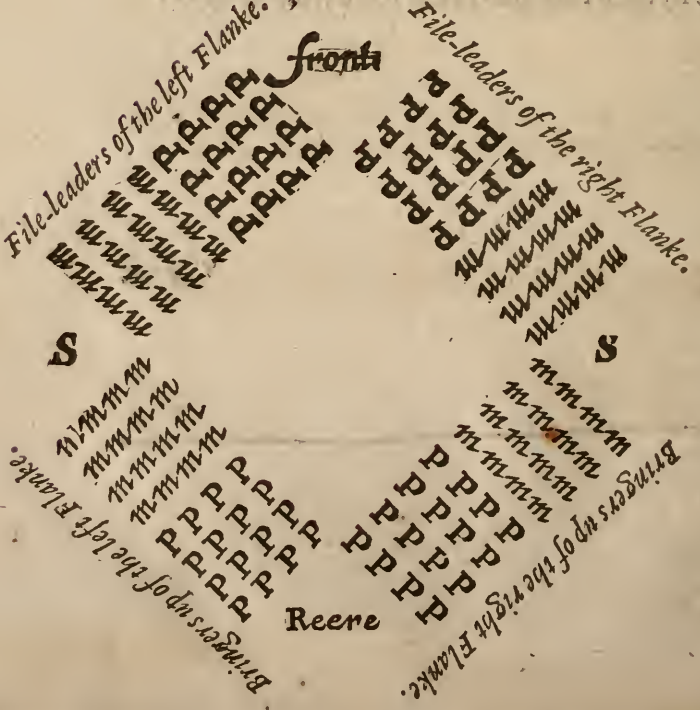
Of wheeling the flanks into the midst of the Battaile.

The Command is,

Wheele front and reere into both Flanks.

The direction is,

Face to the right and left.



THis *diviſionall wheeling* of the *front* and *reere* into both *flankes*, may alſo be termed a *doubling of the depth:* by reaſon that from 8 *deepe*, it maketh them *double numbers*. By this *motion*, the *Muskettiers* which before were *flankers*, are now transferred into the *midſt*, betweene the *front* and *reere* of the *Pikes*. And whereas in the other *figure*, the *wheeling* was about the two *middlemoſt file-leaders*, and *Bringers up*; this *wheeling* contrariwiſe, is about the two *halfe file-leaders* of the *outmoſt files* of each *flanke*. In the other *wheeling*, the *file-leaders* and *bringers up*, made the *innermoſt file:* in this, the *innermoſt file* of each *flanke*, as you may eaſily perceive by the *figure*. This *motion* being performed, it leaves a large *Intervalle* (or *diviſion*) from *front* to *reere*, betweene the *flankes:* which if the Commander paſſe into the *midſt*, betweene each *diviſion*, and *face* them all to him; cauſing them to *cloſe* their *diviſions*, and to march forth into his *firſt place*, (directing their aſpects the ſame way) then will the *Pikes* be in the *front* and *reere*.

For the reducement of this Figure (of *wheeling*) to its former *poſture*; you may *face* the *body* to one of the *flanks*. Which being done, command them againe to *wheele front* and *reere* into both *flankes*; when being *faced* to their former *front*, and having *cloſed* their *diviſion*, they are reduced. But if you would make uſe of ſome other *wheeling*, for *reducement*; then *wheele* both *flanks* into the *front* and *reere*; and they are as at firſt: having *faced* to their *leader*, and *cloſed* their *diviſion*. And thus as briefly and as plainely as I could; have I runne through

through the ſeverall *motions* and *grounds*; for the *diſciplining* of a *foot-company*. And although I neither can, nor hope to give ſatisfaction to all; yet I ſhall intreat the better qualified, that where I am wanting, there they will ſupply my defects with their goodneſſe. Or if it ſo happen, that I undergoe the cenſure of needleſſe ſuperfluitie: I would have ſuch to make uſe of ſo much of it, as they ſhall thinke fit for their owne turnes: and to leave the reſidue unto ſuch as may have opportunity for to uſe it.

THus Courteous Reader have I paſt the grounds
And various motions of the Infantry,
Where thou maiſt gaine the skill, coſt others wounds,
Though from a young one of th' Artillery.
Reade and conſider, if thou nothing gaine,
I aske as little from thee for my paine.

If thou the diſtances doſt well peruſe,
The ſeverall facings and the doublings too,
The Counter-marches which of courſe enſues,
And then our wheelings which we laſtly doe.
Theſe being practis'd, learn'd, and underſtood,
The benefit turnes to thy Countries good.

Theſe, like the vowels, are in number five,
With which we ſpell all words that can be nam'd:
So with theſe motions we all formes contrive,
And from theſe grounds are all our figures fram'd.

Then

Then frame thou no excuſe, but learn to know them,
And with as free an heart as I doe ſhew them.

Now next of all I ſhould ſome firings ſhow,
But leſt perhaps I hold you over long,
I thinke it fit ſome reſpite to beſtow,
Leſt that our Souldiers thinke I doe them wrong.
So pleaſe the Reader but to pauſe the whiles,
And ſee our Leaders exerciſe their files.

For now each Leader is ſo courteous growne,
He ſtrives to bring another to his place.
But they as modeſtly would keepe their owne,
And each prefers his follower to the grace.
So pleaſe you then but winke at the digreſsion,
And you ſhall ſee each Leader by ſucceſsion.

Chap.

Chap. LXVIII.

Of making men file-leaders successively, the files being eight deepe.

IN the making every man in *file, successively leader* according to their *first standing:* may as well and easily be done *in great bodies*, as by *single files*. Yea and with the same words of Command and *direction*, as you may perceive by the *Table*, where the *figures* of *number* shew the succession of each mans *leading*. The words of Command which produce each *leader*, being placed in the Columes beneath. In the first Colume of the *Table*, the *file stands* as at first; with his *proper file-leader* in *front:* each man having his *right place*. The rest of the *files*, demonstrating the *places* of the men, according to their *standing*; upon the making of every severall *file-leader*. The *Commands* are *figures*, which produce the like *leaders*.

The

The front of each file, as they come to be File-leaders; successively.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
2	1	4	3	6	5	8	7
3	4	1	2	7	8	5	6
4	3	2	1	8	7	6	5
5	6	7	8	1	2	3	4
6	5	8	7	2	1	4	3
7	8	5	6	3	4	1	2
8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1

The severall words of Command, which produce each File-leader.

0	Then face about or Countermarch your Files, and they are as at first.
8	Ranks } to the left double. Files }
7	Countermarch Front & Reere into the midst, then face to your Leader.
6	Ranks } to the left double. Files }
5	The first Ranke stand, the reft passe thorough to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.
4	Ranks } to the left double. Files }
3	File-leaders and halt-file-leaders stand, the reft passe thorough to the right, and place your selves before your Leaders.
2	Ranks } to the right double. Files }

The first, are the *proper leaders* of the *files*. For to make the second *leade*, if there be but one *file*, then *file ranke* two to the *right*: if there be more *files*, than *rankes* to the *right*, *double*, and *files* to the *right*, *double*. By which meanes, the second man is become *leader* of his *file*: every man being disposed, as you may perceive by that *file*, whose *leader* is the *figure* of 2. To make him that was the third man, *leader*, let *file-leaders*, and *halfe-file leaders stand*: & the rest passe through to the *right*, & place themselves before their *leaders*. Thus will the *file* stand like that, led by the *figure* of 3. For to make him that was the fourth man *leader*; *Rankes* to the *left*, double; and *files* to the *left*, double: whereby the file will stand like that, *led* by the *figure* of 4. For to make him that was the fift man, *leader*, let the *first ranke* stand; the rest passe through to the *right*, and place themselves before their *leaders*: by which meanes the file will stand like that, *led* by the *figure* 5. For to make him that was the sixt man, *leader*; double your *rankes* to the *left*, and *files* to the *left*, double: and then the *file* will stand, like the *file* led by the *figure* of 6. For to make him that was the seventh man, leader of the *file*; *Countermarch front* and *reere* into the *midst*, and *face* them to the former *front*: whereby the *file* will stand like that led by the *figure* of 7. For to make him that was the eighth man, leade the *file-ranks* to the *left*, double; and *files* to the *left*, double; and the *file* will stand like that, led by the *figure* of 8. For to

reduce

reduce them, cauſe the firſt *ranke* to *ſtand*; the reſt to *advance* forwards to the *right*, placing themſelves before their *leaders*.

Chap. LXIX.

Of making men file-leaders, ſucceſsively: the files being but ſixe deepe.

SOme will be inquiſitive to know for what uſe the *making of leaders by ſucceſsion*, ſerveth: or whether it be not a meere Curioſity: to which I thus anſwer. That it is not only *pleaſant*, but *profitable*. *Pleaſant* to the *leader* of a *file*: who having ſufficiently exerciſed his *file* in *Poſtures*, to give ſome time of reſpite, or delectation, for the recreating of their almoſt tyred ſpirits, brings each man, *ſucceſsively*, to *leade* the *file* by *proper words* of *Command*. And laſtly, *reduceth* each man to his *former ſtanding*. It muſt needs be profitable and much availeable in *diſcipline*, when the skilfull Commander can thereby (with much eaſe) *change* and *interchange*: bring what *rankes* he pleaſeth to *lead* in *front*; and *exchange* them afterwards for others; yea, and laſtly, at his owne pleaſure, bring the *proper file-leaders*

againe into their *places*. This following *table*, shewes each mans severall *place* as they stand; still being *altered*, according to their *various Leaders*. By the figures of number (which are placed over the heads of those Columes, wherein are writ the *words* of Command) understand that those words under the figure of 2. are to make the *second* man, *file-leader*. Those *words*, under the figure of 3. make the *third* man, *leader*. And so forward for the rest.

Chap.

The front of each file, as they come to be Leaders.

1	2	3	4	5	6
2	1	2	5	6	5
3	4	6	1	3	4
4	3	1	6	4	3
5	6	5	2	1	2
6	5	4	3	2	1

The words of Command, which produce each severall Leader.

7	Face to the Reere, and they are reduced.
6	Ranks / Files { to the left double.
5	Ranks to the right double, Files double your depth to the right.
4	Face to the Reere, or let the first ranke stand, the rest passe thorough, &c.
3	Half-files double your Front to the right, Files to the right double.
2	Ranks / Files { to the left double.

The *first man*, is the *leader* of the *file*. For to make the *second man*, leader; *Command*, *file ranke*, *two to the left*. If there be more *files* then one; *ranks to the left*, *double*; and *files to the left*, *double*; which makes the *second man*, *leader*; every man in the *file* being disposed, as you may perceive by that *file*, led by the figure of 2. For to make him that was the *third man*, *leader*; command *halfe files*, *double the front to the right*, and *files to the right*, *double*; by which meanes, the *file* will stand like that, *led* by the figure of 3. For to make him that was the *fourth* man, leader: *Face to the reere*, and then hee leads. But if you will keepe the same *front*; *command the first ranke to stand*, the rest to *passe through to the left: placing your selves before your leaders*. Thus will the *file* stand like that, led by the figure of 4. For to make the fift man, leader: *command*, *rankes to the right*, *double*; and *files to double their depth to the right intire*: by which meanes the *file* will stand like that, led by the figure of 5. For to make the sixt man, *file-leader*: cause *rankes to the left*, double; and *files* to the *left*, double; and then the *file* wil stand like that, led by the figure of 6. For to reduce them, there needs no more but *face* to the reere: notwithstanding if you would have the *front* the same way, the Command is, *the first rank*, *stand*; *the rest passe forwards to the right: placing your selves before your leaders*.

For

For to make sixe men, successively leaders, by sixe words of Command, besides Facings.

The first is *leader:* for the second file, *Ranke 2. to the left*, and *files to the left, double.* For the third, *Countermarch front and reere into the midst:* and *face to that part which was the reere.* For the fourth, *face about to the right.* For the fift, *countermarch front and reere into the midst, and face to that which was the reere.* For the sixt, *ranke two to the right*; and *files to the right, double; face them about,* and they are *reduced.*

Chap. LXX.

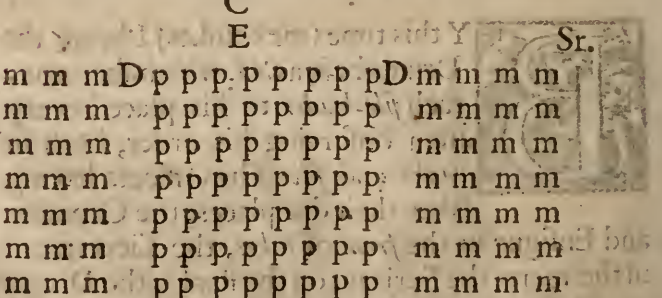
Of drawing the Files againe into a Body: and preparing them for a skirmish.

BY this time (me thinkes) I heare the Drums beat a *Call:* which summons each *file-leader* to his place: every man observing his order, both in *ranke* and *file.* The Officers having taken their due places; the Captaine and Ensigne in the *front* of *Pikes,* the Lievetenant in the reere; the Serjeant on the flanks, the Drums on the *front* and *reere Angles* of the *Pikes:* as you may perceive by the square figure next following.

Now the *Drums beat a march*, the *Ensigne* flying at the *head of the Pikes*; the *Pikes* and *Muskets* shouldered, *marching* at their *distance* of *order* in *file*, at *open order* in *ranke*: presently by a *signe* from the Captaine, the *Drums beat a preparative*: the *Ensigne furl-up*, retiring into the *midst* betweene the *Pikes*; the *Pikes advance*, the *rankes close forwards* to their *order*; the *Muskettiers* makes ready, and every man prepares himselfe for *Battell* or *Skirmish*. And here the Eyes of the *Drum* must be very vigilant, to observe his *Captaine* or *Commander*; that by the least *signe*, either of his *hand*, *leading-staffe*, or whatsoever else he carries, hee may either continue his *charge*, *retreat*, or else *charge home*: and every *Souldier* ought to be so well trayned and practised, that in the time of *Battell*, he may receive ample instructions from the sound of the *Drum*.

The Body drawne into a square: with the Officers in their places.

Front.


C
Sr.
E
Sr.
m m m m D p p p p p p p p D m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
Sr. m m m m D p p p p p p p p D m m m m Sr.
L

Reere.

Thus

Thus many *Officers* may ſerue for a larger *Company*, if the *ſouldiers* be expert and skilfull: and to the contrary, they are all too few, if they be raw and unexperienced. I have ſeene ſome *Companies*, which have been ſo abſolutely ignorant, that each man would have needed an *Officer*, to have kept him orderly in his place. Nevertheleſſe I make no doubt, but that by the carefull overſight of the *Lord Lieutenants*, the good aſſiſtance of their *Deputies*, and the diligence of the *Captains*, and their Officers, this fault will quickly be amended. And this might eaſily enough be done, if that thoſe which are *owners* of *Armes*, would but meet one houre or two in a fortnight (at their beſt leiſures) and practiſe the *poſtures* of the *Pike* & *Musket* firſt, and the *motions*, and *firings*, when they are more expert. If any ſhall *object*, That however this may be done in *Townes* and *Cities*, yet it cannot be in the *Countrey Villages*: I anſwer, That if they meete not above foure, ſixe, or eight in a place, although they have no *Officer* to inſtruct them, yet by conferring, and trying, and often practiſing, they will begin to carry their *Armes* with more eaſe; and to uſe them with more delight. Neither need they to be altogether ignorant, ſeeing there are divers printed *portraitures* of the *poſtures* of each *Armes*: as alſo *books*, whereby they may have very ample inſtruction. By which having attained ſome little skill; they will not be contented, untill they have better improved it by the inſtruction of their *Officers*: after which they will proue better *proficients* in one houre, then as they were before, in a yeare.

CHAP.

Chap. LXXI.

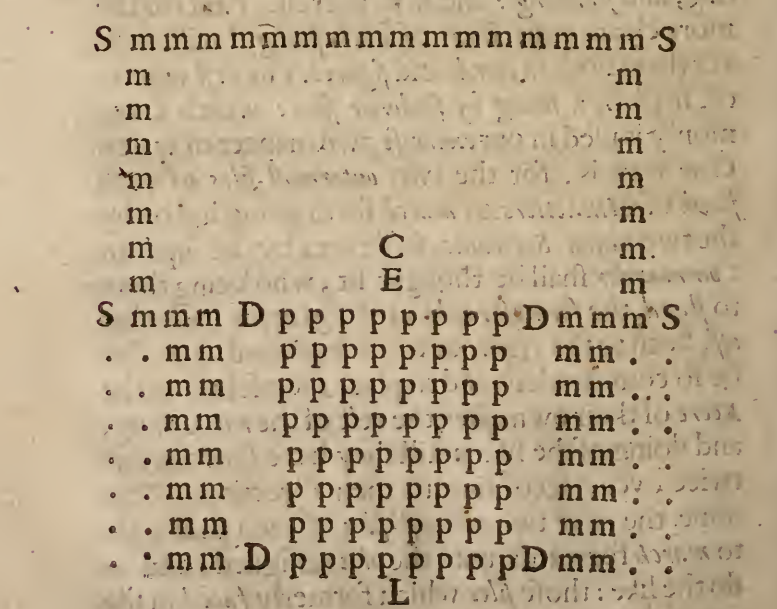
Of firing by forlorne files. The manner, and use.

BEfore I enter upon *formes* and *figures* of *Battel*, be pleased to observe with me, that all *firings*, are either *direct* or *oblique:* notwithstanding that the *formes* are full enough of *varietie*, occasioned (most times) by the *scituation* of the *place*; the *order* of the *enemy*, and the *number* of *men:* with other *Politicall observations*, for the gaining of *winde* and *Sunne*. For the *manner* of *firings*, they are sometimes *advancing* against an *enemy:* sometimes *receiving* the *enemies charge* upon a *stand*; or else *retreiting*. Otherwhiles, we *give fire* in the *Reere*, *marching* from the *Enemy:* or in *Flanke*, *marching* by an *enemy:* and it may so fall out, that the *enemy* may *charge* in severall places at once; as in *Front*, and *Reere*; or in *Front*, *Reere*, and *Flanke*. Of which particulars, I will severally treat, desiring to give content to all, not making the least question but that benefit may accrue unto some. And therefore hoping that the *courteous* and best *qualified*, will accept of my good meaning; and not refuse my cates, although presented unto them in earthen vessels: whereby I shall be induced with more willingnesse, to proceed in my intended discourses, so you be pleased to favour me with your better

better *opinions*; neither rashly condemning me of *prodigalitie*, for enterprising a worke of such *consequence* as this; nor too suddenly accusing my *simplicitie*, for preferring my *rush-light* before the *Sunne*; when others suffer their *Torches* to burne out in darke lanternes: whom I confesse to be farre more able (were they but halfe so willing) to have imparted of their *Talents*, to the benefit of their *Countrey*. But seeing that they will not vouchsafe it, and that I, like *bold bayard*, have adventured thus farre; I shall (with your good favour) proceed. And first I will begin with *firings in front*; *advancing*, and *standing*: and so to the rest. And for the more cleare expression of each *firing*, I will deliver them both in *words* and *figures*. The *first* whereof, shall be a *firing by forlorne files*: which commonly is used in our *exercise*, two manner of waies: One way is, for the two *outermost-files* of each *flank* of *Musketiers*, to *march* forth, being led on by the two *junior Serjeants*, so farre as by the superior *Commander* shall be thought fit; who being there to *stand*, the *formost ranks* are to *give fire*; *wheeling off*, both to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left* (if it be so commanded) and to place themselues in the *Reere* of their owne *files*, the rest of the *ranks firing*, and doing of the like, untill they have *fired* once or twice over, according to their directions. This done, the next two *outmost-files* of each *flanke*, are to *march* forwards unto the *place* assigned; and to do the like: those *files* which formerly *faced*, in the meane time *trooping* backe, and placing themselues next the *pikes*, on the *inside* of the *divisions* of

Musket-

Muskettiers: the reſt of the *Muskettiers* (in like manner) *marching up*, and *firing:* ſtill placing themſelues next the *pikes*, as aforeſaid. When they have *fired* all over, and placed themſelues according to theſe directions: they are *reduced*, as at firſt. A ſecond way of *firing by forlorne files*, may be after this mãner. The *outermoſt files* of each *flank*, are led forth by the *Serjeants*; according to the *charge* untill they have brought them unto a *fit place* for *execution:* and then they *command* their *files* to *ranke inward*, and to *preſent*, and *fire* all together: as you may plainly perceive by the *figure* following.


S m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m S
m m
m m
m m
m m
m m
m C m
m E m
S m m m D p p p p p p p p D m m m S
m m p p p p p p p p m m
m m p p p p p p p p m m
m m p p p p p p p p m m
m m p p p p p p p p m m
m m p p p p p p p p m m
m m D p p p p p p p p D m m
L

The

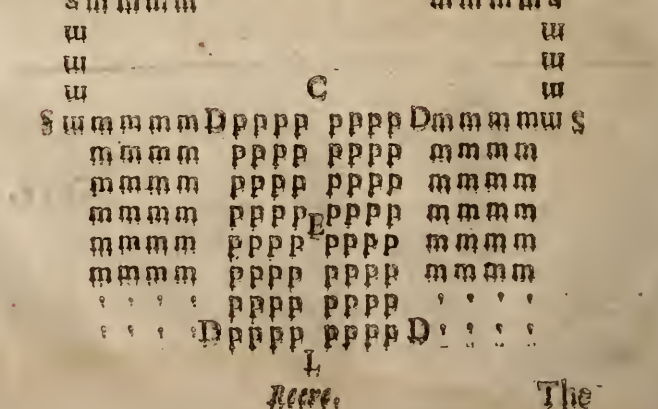
The first two *files*, having *ranked inward*, *presented* and *fired*, are to *wheele off* to the *right* and *left*: following their *leaders* in *single file*, and placing themselves on the *inside* of their *divisions* of *Musketiers* next the *Pikes*; the *next outmost files*, which followed the first in the *reere*; in the meane time *ranking inward*, *firing* and *wheeling* off, as before, and placing themselves next the *Pikes*. And so forwards for all the rest of the *files*: still *marching up*, and doing the like, so long as the Captaine or Commander shall see fitting. These kinde of firings (and all such like) are either for the *beginning* of *skirmishes*, before the *Bodies* come within shot one of another, or to provoke the *enemy* to *battaile*, to draw them from their *Trenches*, into some *ambushment*, and other such politicall ends, the *number* of men which *march* forth upon such *designes*, nor the *manner* are not alwayes certaine, but consists sometimes of more, sometimes of fewer, according to the *number*, *time*, and *place*.

CHAP.

Chap. LXXII.

Of firings by two Ranks, ten paces advanced before the front: Next, even with the front; and lastly, even with the halfe files.

Advancing of two *rankes* to *fire*; ten paces before the *front*, is most commonly used, when one or both *Battailes* march against each other: the *Muskettiers* being *led* forth by two rankes together, ten or twenty *paces*, before the *front* of the *body*; that so they may come neere enough to doe certaine *execution*. A *Serjeant* from each *flanke leading* up the two *foremost rankes*, (according as they shall have order) the first *ranke* of each *flanke* is to *present* and *give fire*, *wheeling* either all *off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*, as you may perceive by the following Figure.



The

The first ranks having *presented, fired,* and *wheeled off*, (as aforesaid) are to *march* close downe in *single file,* within three foot of their owne flankes, untill they come to the *Reere* of their owne *divisions:* where every man is to place himselfe in the *reere* of his owne *file.* The second ranke being at the distance of three foot, behinde the first ranke, when they first tooke their ground: they likewise are to rest their *Muskets*, mounting their muzzles cleere of their Leaders, and so to stand with their *matches cockt,* and *pans guarded,* that so they may levell and fire as soone as their Leaders are cleere of them, and wheele off, in like manner placing themselves as they were before. The next two rankes are to beginne to *advance* forwards, when they see the *last* of the two former ranks, presented ready to *fire.* And they also having *fired, wheele off* as the others did before them. And so, *successively* the rest of the ranks advancing, fire and wheeling off againe, placing themselves according to former directions. This way, they may give *fire,* once or ofner over, as the enemy doth *advance,* or the Commander shall see fitting. All this while that the *Musketiers advance* so farre before the *front,* (if the *body* be upon *march*) the Pikes may be *shouldered:* but when the *bodies* come within twelve score, or lesse, then it is fit that the Musketiers *give fire* even with the *front* of the Pikes, and that the Pikemen, advance their Pikes, and *close forwards* to their *distance* of three foot, that so they may be *even* in ranke with their Musketiers, as you may perceive by the following Figure.

Front

Front.

C

S	mmmm	D	pppp	pppp	D	mmmm	S
	mmmm		pppp	pppp		mmmm	
	mmmm		pppp	pppp		mmmm	
w	mmmm		pppp	pppp		mmmm	w
w	mmmm		pppp	E pppp		mmmm	w
w	mmmm		pppp	pppp		mmmm	w
w	mmmm		pppp	pppp		mmmm	w
S	· · · ·	D	pppp	pppp	D	· · · ·	S

L

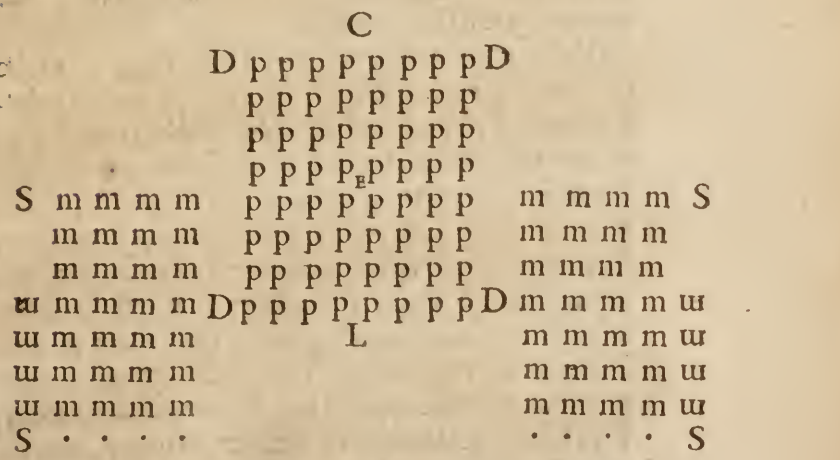
Reere.

Now the *Pikes* being *advanced*, and the *rankes closed forwards* to their due *distance* of *order*, the *Musketiers* are to *present*, *even* with the *front*, every *ranke* successively moving forward, untill they come to be *even* in *ranke* with the first *ranke* of *Pikes*, there to *give fire*, and to *wheele off* to the *right* and *left*, *trooping*, *file-wise*, downe close to their owne divisions: and taking their places in the *reere*, as in the former figures. The first *ranke* of *Musketiers* having *fired*, and *wheeled* away, the next *ranks* are to *move* forwards at three **motions*, into their places; and there to *give fire* after the same manner: *wheeling* away againe, and placing themselves according to former *directions*, every *ranke* still making good their *Leaders ground*. In this

* The three motions are, *Blow your Coale*, *Open your Pan*, *Present Breast high*. You are to *blow* your *Coale*, stepping forwards with your left foot. *Open your Panne*, stepping forwards with your right foot. *Present*, stepping forwards with your left foot. These *Motions* are to be performed, hand and foot together, by every one that *advanceth ground*, to *give fire*, without expecting any directions in time of *Skirmish*.

this sort the *battell* may be continued, untill they have *fired* once, twice, or oftner over; and that the *Bodies* become so close together, that the *Pikes* begin to *porte*, and so at length come to *push of Pike*. Which done, the *Muskettiers* are to *give fire*, either *retreiting*, or else not to *advance* further, then the *halfe files* of *Pikes*. For in that place (the *bodies* being come so neere together) they will doe as much *execution*, as if they were *even* with the *front*. The manner of the *standing*, you may perceive by the following Figure.

Front.


C
D p p p p p p p p D
p p p p p p p p
p p p p p p p p
p p p P E p p p p
S m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m S
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p p p p p p m m m m
ш m m m m D p p p p p p p p D m m m m ш
ш m m m m L m m m m ш
ш m m m m m m m m ш
ш m m m m m m m m ш
S . . . . S

Reere.

The Pikes being now come to *push*, the Muskettiers are to *advance* no further than the *halfe files* of Pikes: that (so they may doe *execution* with their

shot, and be out of danger of the Pikes. This having attained, they are there to *present*, and *give fire*; every ranke still *moving forwards*, and maintaining his leaders *ground*. After they have performed their *firing*, they are to *wheele off* by *division*, as in the former Figures: still placing themselves in the *reere* of their owne *files*, alwaies taking their directions from the *Drum*, either for *charging* or *retreiting*, &c.

The *battell* or *charge* being ended, the *reducement* is easie. The *leader* of each *file*, being in his place at the *head* of his *file*; command the *Musket-tiers* to *march* up, *even* with the *front* of *pikes*; and then they will be as at first.

Obserue withall that when the *firing* is to be performed, *even* with the *front*; then the *Musket-tiers* are stil to make good their *leaders ground*. The want to be in the place of most security (which is the *Reere*) as you may perceive by the *pricks*, which I have designed, for noting out the *empty roomes* of such, who have *closed forwards* to make good the *ground* in the *front*: the others that last *fired* are wheeled off, and *trooping downe* into their places. When the *firing* is *even* with the *halfe-files*, they are to do the like: unlesse the *Drumme beat* a *retreat*; for then, the *Muskettiers* neither *advance*, nor *retreat*: but every *rank giving fire* on the same *ground*, they *stand*: and then *wheele off* againe, that their fellows may do as much. Nevertheless when the *forlorne files march forth*, or that two ranks *march forth*, ten *paces* (or more) before the *front*: then they are to *give fire*, as upon a *retreit*: unlesse the

enemy

enemy flye. I will now ſhew ſome other wayes of *firing* in *front*; before I ſhew the *firings* in the *reere*. The firſt whereof, ſhall be the *horne Battell*: as in the *Chapter* following.

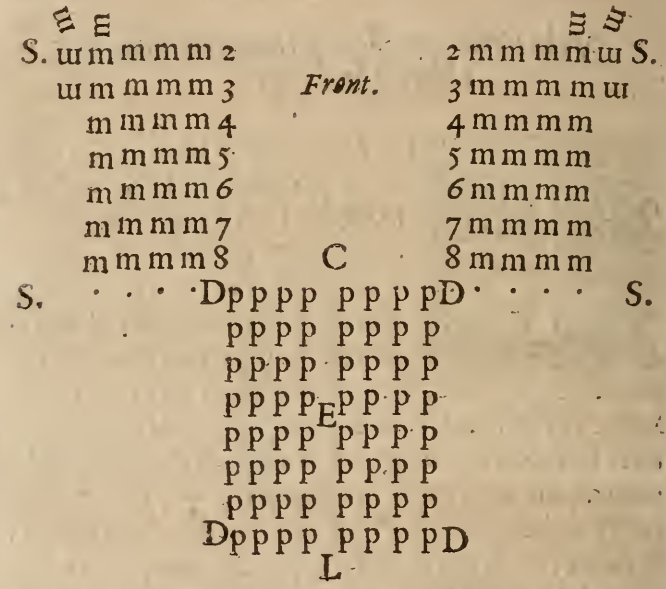
Chap. LXXIII.

Of the Horne-battell; how to make it: and to reduce it by firing.

THe *Horn-battell* may be for the ſame occaſion and uſe, as the *firing* by two *ranks* ten *paces advancing* before the *front*: and is by ſome held more ſerviceable, becauſe that the *muſkettiers* do their *execution* more roundly, without any intermiſſion of time: and keepe themſelues without ſtragling from their *bodies*. Beſides, the *wings* of *Muskettiers* being ſo *advanced*, are more apt for *over-fronting*, and more eaſily to be wheeled; whereby to *charge* the *enemy* in *flanke*; each of theſe *wings*, or *diviſions*, are to be *led up* by a *Serjeant* (or ſome other *ſuperiour Officer*) unto the *place* appointed by the *Chiefe*. But becauſe that it may be performed in time of *exerciſe*, by the intelligible *Souldier*, obſerve the *Command* which produceth this following *figure*.

Pikes, ſtand; Muskettiers, march; untill the Bringers up, ranke with the front of Pikes.

The Horne-battell.


S. ш m m m m 2
ш m m m m 3
m m m m 4
m m m m 5
m m m m 6
m m m m 7
m m m m 8
Front.
C
2 m m m m ш S.
3 m m m m ш
4 m m m m
5 m m m m
6 m m m m
7 m m m m
8 m m m m
S. D p p p p p p p p D S.
p p p p p p p p
p p p p p p p p
p p p p E p p p p
p p p p p p p p
p p p p p p p p
p p p p p p p p
D p p p p p p p p D
L

The *figure* being perfect, the *firſt ranke* of *Muſkettiers*, *preſent* and *give fire wheeling off*, either all to the *right*; or to the *right* and *left* (according as they ſhall have direction) and placing themſelues, orderly, in the *Reere* of their owne *files*. The *next ranke*

ranke (after the ſame manner) *firing* and *wheeling off*, and placing themſelues *behinde* thoſe, which were their *leaders*. Thus is every *rank*, ſucceſſively, to do the like: untill they have all *given fire*. If the *Commander* would ſtill preſerve, and continue the ſame *figure*; then let the *Muskettiers* ſtill *move forwards*, into the *ground* (or place) of them that *fired* before them: and the *forme* will be ſtill the ſame. And if by the *Chiefetain* it be found neceſſary, that after once or twice *firing over*, the *ſhot* ſhould *flanke* their *pikes*; then the *Muskettiers*, muſt not *advance* into their *leaders ground*; but, to the contrary, every *ranke* is to *preſent* and *fire* on the ſame *ground* they *ſtand*: and that ſo ſoone as they are *cleere* of their *leaders*. Or if need be, the *pikes* may *advance* and *march* up, to make their *front intire*: which being done, the *file-leaders* of *Muskettiers* being in *front*, they are *reduced*.

Chap. LXXIIII.

Of the Demie-hearſe Battell: The uſe of the figure; how to make it, and to reduce it by firing.

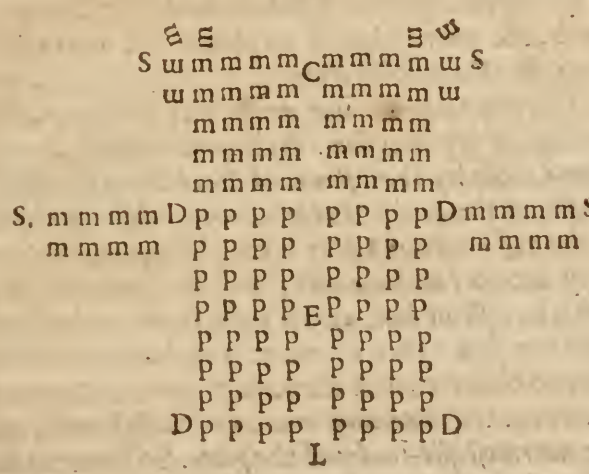
THe next *firing* in *Front* which I preſent unto you, is the *Demie Hearſe:* which is a *figure* moſt *firme*, moſt *ſollid*, and moſt *ſtable*, yea, and doth as much *execution*, as any of the former: and that with halfe the danger. For the *pikes* in the former *figure*, they either *ranke even* with the *front* of Muskets: or elſe, the *diviſion* of *Muskettiers* being *open*, they become liable to the danger of the enemies *ſhot:* themſelues not being able to do any thing, either *offenſive* or *defenſive*. But, to the contrary, in this *figure*, they are ſecurely covered by their owne *Muskettiers:* untill they approach nearer to the *enemy*. Whereby they may be able to do ſome *ſervice*; either by ſending their *ſhowres* of *arrows* amongſt them, for bringing their *array* out of *order*, or elſe, by *cloſing neerer*, come to the *ſhocke*, and ſo try the *fortune* of the *day*. But not to hold you longer in *circumſtance*, take the *words* of *command:* which produce the *figure*, as followeth.

Pikes,

Pikes, ſtand, Muskettiers, advance before your Front of Pikes: and cloſe your Diviſions.

The Demic-hearſe.

Front.



For the *firings* on this *figure*, they may be divers; yet I ſhall content my ſelfe onely to ſhew two of them: The *firſt* is, that the *Muskettiers* may at the diſcretion of the *Commander*, *give fire* in *front:* and ſo *wheele off* by *diviſion* (or all to the *right*, as ſhall beſt pleaſe him that *commands* in *Chiefe*) placing themſelues in the *Reere* of their owne *diviſions* and *files* of *ſhot*, which is juſt *before* the *front* of *pikes*.

The *next ranks* then *moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*, are to *present*, *fire*, *wheele off*, and place themselues after the same manner: the *rest* of the *ranks* of *Musketiers*, doing the like, untill they have all *given fire:* which *firing*, doth nothing alter the *forme* or *figure* of *battell*. Having *fired* once or twice over this way, the *second firing* shall serue for *reducement:* which is indeed the *firing* intended to be expreſt by this figure. And that I may by *words*, the more clearly explaine the *worke*, take theſe *directions* following.

The *first ranke* having *given fire*, are to *wheele* equally *off* by *diuiſion:* each part falling *file-wiſe downe*, cloſe by their *flanks* of *Muskettiers:* untill the *leaders* of the *ranks* of *Muskets* come downe as low as the *first ranke* of *pikes*; which being performed, they are to *face outwards*, and to move ſo farre forth in a *ſtrait line*, untill they have *ranked even* with the *first ranke* of *pikes*. But herewithall are they to obſerue, that they muſt leaue an *Intervall* betweene the *innermoſt-musket* of each *flanke*; and the *outermoſt-file-leader* of the *pikes*. So ſoone as the *first ranke* hath *given fire* and *wheeled away*, the *ſecond ranke* is to *giue fire*, *wheeling off*, as before, and *paſſing downe* betweene the *Intervals* on the *flanks:* placing themſelues after their leaders. The ſame is every *ranke* ſucceſſively to do, untill all the *Muſkettiers* are *drawne* from before the *front*, and placed on the *flanke* of their *pikes*. But when there are not aboue *two ranks* of *Muskettiers* to *giue fire*, then the *pikes* may *port*; and when the *Muskettiers* haue *fired*, and are *wheeled away*, they may *charge*. And

laſtly,

laſtly, the *pikes* being *re-advanced*, the *body ſtands reduced*, as at firſt.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of giving Fire, advancing, by way of Introduction: with the beneficiall uſe of the Bow and Pike.

I Shall next offer to your peruſall, a *figure* of *Introduction:* which is a *paſſing through* or *betweene:* Being a *firing* by way of *advancing* againſt the *enemy*, and of *gaining ground.* I will not diſpute how uſefull it is; but ſure I am, it is over-ballanced with danger. As for ſuch whom I haue ſeene to *practiſe* it, they have rather uſed it for *varietie*, in a well experienced *Company*, then for any knowne *excellency* it hath in it ſelfe. But if theſe *lines* happen to be over-lookt by any, that preſerues a better opinion of this *firing* by *introduction*, then I do: I ſhall be willing to leave them to their owne liking, while I in the meane time proceed to ſhew the manner of the *execution*, which is uſually one of theſe two wayes. The firſt, when the *Motion is begun by the ſecond ranke from the front.* The other, when *it is begun by the Bringers up.* Nevertheleſſe you muſt note, that your *files* of *Muſkettiers* muſt be *opened* to their *open order*; before the *firing* begin: that ſo, the *Muskettiers* may paſſe betweene the *Intervals* of each *file*, to *give fire* in the

the *front*. And therefore take the words of Command and Direction; which will produce this Figure following.

Muskettiers, make ready to give fire by introduction to the right.

Files of Muskettiers, open by Division to your open order.

```
S m  m  m  m                    m  m  m  m  S
  m m m m m m m        C         m m m m m m m
  m m m m m m m D p p p p  p p p p D m m m m m m m
  m m m m m m m   p p p p  p p p p   m m m m m m m
S m  m  m  m      p p p p  p p p p   m  m  m  m  S
                  p p p p E p p p p
                  p p p p  p p p p
                  p p p p  p p p p
                  p p p p  p p p p
                D p p p p  p p p p D
                        L
```

This *firing* by introduction may be thus performed. The Pikes being flankt with their Muskettiers, the first ranke of each flanke, *present* and *give fire*: having *fired*, they *stand* and *make ready* againe in the same place. The second ranke passing forwards before the first, doe there *fire* and *stand*: the third rank then passing forwards after the second, and

and ſtanding even in ranke with them that firſt *fired*; that ſo ſoone as the ſecond ranke hath *fired*, they may quickly ſtep before them, and *fire* in like manner. In this *firing*, ſtill the ranke which is next to *fire*, ſtands even in ranke with them which laſt *fired*; untill thoſe which *ſtand preſented*, have likewiſe *given fire*: after which they then paſſe before them; the Ranke which was their next followers, paſſing forwards and ranking with thoſe which laſt *fired*: every man following his Leader ſucceſſively, untill the *Bringers up* give *fire*, & *ſtand*, and then the Figure will become a *Horne battell*. All the while that this *firing* by *Introduction*, is continued, the Pikes may be ſhouldered (if there be no feare of *horſe*) or otherwiſe at diſcretion. If you continue this *firing* twice over; the Muskettiers will have their *right places*: which being done, *march* up your Pikes, to ranke even with your Muskettiers in *front*, and they are *reduced*. For the other way of *firing by introduction*, the firſt ranke (or *file-leaders*) are to *give fire* as before, and to ſtand, the laſt ranke (or *bringers up*) in the interim of their *firing*; *marching up*, and *ranking even* with the ſecond ranke: the reſt following their *Bringers up*; as they do when *Bringers up* double their *front*. The firſt ranke having *fired*, the *Bringers up* ſtep immediately before them; *preſent*, and *give fire*; the reſt ſtil, ſucceſſively, doing the like; untill every rank have *given fire* once over. Obſerve withal that the *file-leaders* are to *give fire* twice over: being the firſt & the laſt: & then to *ſtand*, the *Pikes* marching

up

up, even with their front of Muskettiers. And thus they are *reduced*, as at first. The Pikemen, all the time of this *firing*, doe no service: Notwithstanding, if one *halfe* of them had *bowes* fastened unto their Pikes (being able and well practised men) they might, whilest the Muskettiers are in *firing*, be dealing of their doles about: and although their *arrowes* did not happen to wound mortally, yet the whisteling noyse, the terrour of the sight, and the severall hurts (which could not chuse but be many) would be a great abatement to the stoutest courages. And great pitty it is to see, the lusty *Pike-man* poorely to droppe downe by the *Musket-shot*; himselfe not being able to hurt his enemy at that distance, nor defend himselfe.

Chap. LXXVI.

The way to make the Diamond Battell: severall waies to fire upon it: with divers other figures and firings, which are thereby produced.

THe *Diamond Battell* is also a *firing in front*; though more for *shew*, then *moderne service*; yet becaus that some hold it in venerable respect, I thought fit to place it amongst the rest; leaving every man to his liking, either to use it

it or refuſe it. It may be that ſome will looke, that I ſhould make the *Sheere Battell*; the *Wedge*, the *Saw*, and many ſuch like: which might be made either *hollow* or *ſollid*. But I ſhall intreate ſuch to ſpare me; for I would not willingly ſpend time to ſo ſmall purpoſe; chuſing rather to inſiſt on Figures; more profitable for them, and commendable for mee. Yet if any man have a minde to practiſe any of them, by obſervation of this *Diamond Battell*, he may eaſily make them. But not to hold you longer with circumſtance, the words of Command, and direction, which are for the making of this *Diamond Battell*, are as follow.

Firſt cauſe your Muskettiers of the right flanke, to open to the right, to a ſufficient diſtance: for receiving the Muskets of the left flanke.

Then command the Muskettiers of the left flanke, to paſſe through into the ſpace of ground on the right.

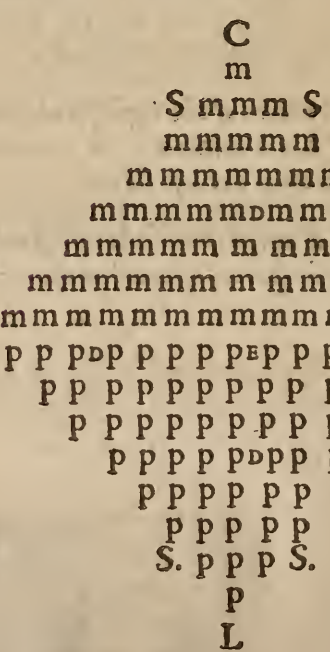
This

This being done, for to make the Figure,

Command.

Files of Muskettiers, ranke 1.3.5.7. *&c. by increase, to the left.*

Files of Pikes, ranke by decrease after your Muskettiers.


C
m
S mmm S
mmmmm
mmmmmmm
mmmmmDmmmm
mmmmm m mmmmm
mmmmmm m mmmmmm
mm m mmmmmmmmmmm
p p pDp p p p pEp p p pDp p p
p p p p p p p p p p p p
p p p p p p p p p p p
p p p p pDpp p p
p p p p p p p
p p p p p
S. p p p S.
p
L

The

The Muskettiers may *fire* on this figure, divers waies: though I onely intend to speake unto two of them. The first, is the most usuall way: and that is, the *giving fire in ranke*; the first man (or *poynt* of the *Diamond*) first *giving fire*: then wheeling off to the *right*, and placing himselfe just behinde the *single Pikeman*, in the *reere*. Then, the *next ranke* being three men, *give fire*; *wheeling off* by *division*: and placing themselves in *ranke*, behinde the *single Muskettiers*, as they were before the *firing* began. This done, the *ranke* of five *Muskettiers*, *gives fire*; *wheeling off*, in like manner, by *division*: ever observing, that where the *number* is *odde*, & they command to *wheele off* by *division*; there the greatest number, alwaies goes to the *right*. And so, in like manner, the *rankes give fire*, successively; and place themselves after their *leaders*, as before. When all the *Muskettiers* have *given fire*, and are *wheeled off*; then *charge Pikes*, which will be fifteene in the *first ranke*; the rest *decreasing*. Having advanced your *Pikes*, your figure will stand like two *wedges*, with their poynts *ioyned*, as you may perceive by this Figure next following.

Front.

Front.

C

S p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p S
. p p p p p p p p p p p p p p p .
. p p p p p p p p p p p p p p .
. D p p p p p E p p p p p D .
. p p p p p p p p .
. p p p p p p .
. p p p .
. p .
. m .
. m m m .
. m m m m m .
. m m m m m m m .
. D m m m m m D m m m m m D .
. m m m m m m m m m m m m .
. m m m m m m m m m m m m m .
S m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m S

L

Reere.

If you would *reduce* your men from this Figure, without *firing*, (your men being ſufficiently expert) let the *Muskettiers ſtand*, and *Pikes face* to the *reere:* and ſo the *wedges* will ſtand *faced* in *oppoſition*. Next, *command* them to *interchange ground:* the *Muskettiers* advancing forwards, into the *ground* of the *Pikes*, and the *Pikes*, moving into the *ground* of the *Muskettiers*; and then by *facing* the *Pikes* to the *former front*, the *body* will ſtand in forme of a *Diamond* againe.

If you would *give fire* from this Figure (all the Musket-

Musketiers being in the *reere*) the *body* muſt *face about:* and ſo the *firing* will be contrary to the former. But if you *wheele them about*, they may *give fire* the ſame way. Howſoever, they having *given fire*, are to *wheele off* by *diviſion*, and to place themſelves in the *reere* of the Pikes, *even* in ranke again, as they were when they *gave fire*. Thus having all *fired* ouer, and *wheeled away*; the Pikes may charge: and being againe *advanced*, the *body* will ſtand in forme of a *Diamond:* and this I pray you to conceive, for I intend not to remake the Figure.

The *ſecond* way of *firing* on the *Diamond figure*, is by way of *Countermarch:* and is an *oblique firing*. For whereas in the other *firing* by *ranks* (in the *Diamond Battell*) each *ranke fired* by *increaſe* of two (*beginning* with *one*, and *ending* with fifteene in a *ranke*) this *firing*, contrariwiſe, *begins* with 15. and *ends* with 1. ſtill *decreaſing* 2. For this *firing*, your *files* muſt be at *open order*, becauſe the *Musketiers* muſt *countermarch* downe betweene the *Intervals* of their owne *files* to the *right:* every *Muskettier* that findes himſelfe without a *leader*, being to *preſent* and *give fire:* and then to *countermarch* to the *right*, and to place himſelfe in the *Reere* of his own *file*, behinde the *pikes*. When the firſt 15. have fired, then the *next* 13. *preſent*, *fire*, and *countermarch*, ſtill placing themſelues in the *reere* of their owne *files*. Next there fireth 11. then 9. &c. for ſtill there fires ſo many, as are *cleere* of any *leaders*. And in this manner of *firing*, they that *fire together*, ſtand neither in *ranke* nor *file*, but *obliquely*. When all the *Muskettiers* have *fired*, and are *countermarcht* into

the *Reere* of their owne files; let the *pikes charge*: and so the *forme* of your *battell*, will be like a *long wedge*: as you may perceive by the following *figure*, where now your *Ranks* are become 2. and 2. of a *number*.

Front.

C

S p p p p p p p p p p p p p p S
D m p p p p p p p p p p p p p m D
m p p p p p p p p p p p p m
m m p p p p p p p p p p m m
m m p p p p p p p p m m
m m m p p p p p p m m m
m m m p p p p p m m m
m m m m p p p p m m m m
m m m m p p p m m m m
D m m m m m m m m D
m m m m m m m
m m m m m
m m m m
S m m m S
m m m
m
m
L

Reere.

Your men standing in *forme* afore-shewed, if you please yet to be more curious, *face* them all to the *Reere*: and *command* your *Muskettiers* to *march* ten or twelue paces. Your *pikes* to *stand*, and your *Muskettiers* will present you with an *hollow wedge*, and your

your *pikes* with a *ſollid wedge*. Laſtly, to *reduce* all theſe ſeverall *formes* into the *firſt proper ſquare battell*: firſt, let the *ſollid wedge, cloſe forward*, into the *hollow* of the other: then, let the *Muskettiers make ready, preſent*, and *fire*, as before. That is to ſay, every *Muskettier* that finds himſelfe without a *leader*, is to *give fire*, and to *countermarch* to the *reere* of his owne file, the reſt doing the like, ſucceſſively. When they have all fired, and are *countermarcht* cleere, let the *pikes charge*: and then your *body* will have the *form* of a *Diamond* againe. Next, *face* them all to the *Reere*; and *command, Ranks*, file 8. to the right. Which being done, paſſe through the *Muskettiers* which belong to the *left-flanke*, into their places; and *cloſe* the *Muskettiers* of the *right-flanke* to their due *diſtance*: and ſo they will ſtand, all properly *reduced*.

Chap. LXXVII.

Of the Convex Halfe Moone; The uſe of the Figure: and of ſeverall wayes of firing upon it.

THe *Convex halfe-moone*, or *ſemicircular Battell*, is a *forme* both good and uſefull; which the *time*, the *number*, and *place* (with other *circumſtances*) may make either *beneficiall* or *prejudiciall*: Wiſe *Captains* and *Commanders*

ever foreseeing with providence, what *formes* or *figures* may be most *profitable* and *available*, for the present *service*. This *Convex figure* may be usefull, either at the *landing* of *souldiers* in an *enemies Countrey*, or for *necessity* (the *enemy* being more able in *horse*) making use either of *hedge*, *ditch*, *wood*, *creeke* or *River*; to *secure* the *Reere*. For the *figure* it selfe, it may be made many wayes; either with the *Musketiers outermost*, or *innermost*, or *lined*, &c. as pleasest he *Commander*. It may also be made in a *Regimentall* way, or after the way of a small and private *Company*: But because I have onely in this my smal *Treatise*, taken upon me to shew the *postures*, *motions*, and *figures*, which are most usually done in a small *Company* (although many of them, yea the more part, may be very fit for larger *Bodies*) I shall content my self to saile in so small a bottome, not desiring to put on more saile then will suffice for the bearing of so small a burthen. Wherefore my request shall be, that every *courteous* and skilful *Pilot* that shall *come aboard* this small *Barke*; will be pleased neither to *launch* it into the *maine*, lest it be swallowed in the *Surges*; nor to *expose* it to the danger of *shelues*, *rocks*, and *sands*; lest it suffer *shipwracke* for want of good guidance, but so to *steere* it, that it may safely arrive at its desired *Harbour*: wherein they will both honour themselves, in expressing their vertues, and gratifie me, by applying each *motion*, *figure*, and *forme*, to his right use, and true intention. I will now shew, how the *figure* is to be made, which is as followeth: If your *Battell* be in *forme* of an *Hearse*, then *wheele* them to

the

the *right* or *left about*; untill they have atteined this *figure*. But if in a *ſquare*, then obſerve theſe following *words*; which will produce the *figure*.

Wheele your Flanks into the Front: then face the Body to one of the Flanks: and wheele your Battell into a Convex Halfe Moone.

The Convex Halfe Moone.

Having brought your *Souldiers* into this *Convex forme*, you may *face* them all *inward*, for *ſpeech*; or *outward* for *fight*. Then let the *Officers* make *Intervals* for the *Muskettiers*; and let the *outermoſt Arc*,

or *first ranke* of each *division, present*, and *give fire:* those of the *right flanke, wheeling off* to the *right*; the *left-flanke*, to the *left*; placing themselues in the *Reere* of their owne *divisions* of *Muskettiers*; still making *good* their *leaders ground*. The rest of the *ranks* are to do the same: untill they have all *given* fire. Nevertheleſſe, if your *enemy* be too potent for you by reason of his *horse*, your *Bow-pike-men* need not stand idle; although they stand behinde their Muskettiers: for that they may plie them faster with their *shafts*, then the others can with their *shot*. But if the *horse* be so *violent*, that the Muskettiers may not abide them; then let them *give fire*, and *wheele off* by *division*, as before: passing quite through their *Intervals*, and placing themselues in the *Reere* of their pikes: every ranke making *good* their *leaders ground*. Thus also are the rest of the Muskettiers to *give fire*, placing themselues in the *concave* part of the *Body*, as aforesaid: following the pikes which now make *good* the *Muskettiers ground*. If need be, the pikes may *charge over-hand:* or if occasion serves, at the *foot*, drawing forth their *swords, over their left armes; and couching downe their heads:* by which meanes the *Muskettiers* may give *fire*, over their shoulders. For the *first ranke* having *fired*, may *kneele* downe on the *ground*, and *charge* againe: and so the *second ranke* may *give fire*, and *kneele* in like manner: making ready againe. And so in like manner for all the rest: all *giving fire*, and kneeling on the ground; that so the next *ranke* behinde may *give fire* over them. Thus continuing the *firing*, untill all the *Muskettiers* have *given*

ven fire. Nevertheleſſe if need be, the *firſt ranke* may riſe with the reſt, and *give fire* over again, as before. And ſo the *Battell* may be continued; the *Pikes* ſtill keeping off the *horſe*.

For the *reducement* of this *figure*, & to bring every man to his place: let your *Muskettiers* (either *firing*, or *paſſing through*) be brought into the *places* they were in, before they firſt *gave fire*. Then *face* the whole *Body* to one of the *flankes*; and *march* them untill they have *evened their rankes*, and *ſtraitned* their *files*. This done, then if all your *Pikes* be on the *right flanke*; *wheele* your *right flanke* into the *midſt*; if on the *left flank*, *wheele front* and *reere* into the *left flanke*. This being done, let the *Commander* paſſe to his proper *file-leaders*; and *face* the whole *Body* to him, and they are *reduced* as at firſt.

Chap. LXXVIII.

Of Extraduction: the ſeverall uſes, firings, and Reducements.

He next *Firing* which I ſhall take upon me to demonſtrate, ſhall be by way of *Extraduction*: which is alſo a *firing in Front*. It may be to ſingular good uſe, in a *ſtrait* or *paſ-*

ſage where your *Wings* and *Reere* may be *ſecured:* your enemy being ſuppoſed to be too powerfull for you, either in *Horſe* or *Foot*, or both. Having gotten into ſome *ſtrait*, there fill the *mouth* of the *paſſage* with your *Pikes:* and if the length of your *Company* be not ſufficient to do it, then *double* your *ranks* (as in this following figure) and let your *pikes* either *order, advance, port*, or *charge:* according to the occaſion; your *Muskettiers* being in the *Reere*, may *march up* into the *Front*, and *fire*. But before I ſhew the *firing*, obſerve theſe following *directions*, which produce the *Figure*.

Pikes ſtand, Muskettiers face to the Reere, and March untill you are cleere of your body of Pikes;

Then face inward, and cloſe your diviſion: that being done face to your Leader, and double your Rankes.

This being performed, the *Pikes* are all in *front*, the *Muskettiers* in *Reere*.

A firing by Extraduction.

Front.

S m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m S
p p p p p p p pc p p p p p p p p m
p p p p p p p pD p p p p p p p p m
p p p p p p p pE p p p p p p p p m
D p p p p p p p pD p p p p p p p mD
∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃ ∃
m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m
S m m m m m m m m m m m m m m m S

L

Reere.

Ha-

Having ordered your *battell* in this manner, let the first ranke of Musketiers (which are those that follow next after the Pikes) *face* to the *right*, and *march* forth *(file-wise) to close* by the *right flanke* of Pikes, untill he that is the *leader* of them, be come into the *front* of Pikes, then hee is to *leade* them quite *crosse* the *front* of Pikes; untill he have attained the further part of the *front* to the *left*; which being done, they are all to *stand*, *present*, and *give fire*. You must note withall, in this *firing*, that hee which was the *right hand man* of the Ranke, and was the *leader* of the *motion*, now becomes the *left hand man*, when he *gives fire*; and that having *fired*, they are to *wheele off* to the *left*, close to the left flanke of Pikes, and so to fall in the *reere* of the Musketiers. In the *interim*, whilest that the ranke which first *fired*, is *wheeling* away, the second rank is *marching* into their *places* to *give fire*. And in this manner they may maintaine their *Battaile*, so long as they please: the Pikes either *porting* or *charging* all the whiles. The Musketiers in the time of their *crossing the front*, are to *couch*, or *stoope under* their Pikes; that so they may be no impediment to the Pikes in their *charge*. There is another way of *firing by Extraduction*, which is, *that the right hand leader of Musketiers, placeth himselfe before the right file-leader of Pikes*: the *rest all falling beyond him*: nevertheless because I conceive it not to be so good a way as that already shewne, I will not trouble you with it: but come immediately to the *reducement* of this, which is as followeth. Command your Pikes to *stand*, and your Muskets to

double

double their *front* by *division:* but if you want room to doe it, then first *double* your files to the *contrary hand* of that, which you *doubled* your rankes; and so hauing *doubled* by *division*, as aforesaid, they will be *reduced*, as at first.

Chap. LXXIX.

Of the Broad-fronted Battell: with the wayes of firing upon it.

He *broad-fronted battell*, must needs be of speciall use; for many occasions, either *offensive* or *defensive*. Which because it is so apparant to all, I shall not need to stand to reason with any; rather desiring to shew the manner of making and reducing it: which is as followeth. Cause your Pikes to *stand*, and your Musketiers to *march*: untill the *reere ranke* of Musketiers be *advanced* a little before the first ranke of Pikes; then let the Musketiers *face inward*, (or in *opposition*) and *close* their *divisions*; and then *face* to their *leader*. And if you would bring more *hands* to *fight*, double rankes to any *hand*, and the *body* (for *forme* and *number*) will stand like the figure here next following. But the *speediest way*, and (I thinke the best) I am sure with expert *Souldiers*, is to *wheele* both flanks into the *front*, which is the way intended by this Figure. For the manner

ner of the *firing* it ſelfe, you may partly perceive that there are *intervalles* made for each *diviſion*, to *wheele off* to the *right*, that ſo they may either fall in the *reer* of the Muskettiers, & there continue the *firing*; or elſe fall in the *reer* of the pikes, & be therby ſecured from the *horſe*. It may be done, one or both wayes: according to the *occaſion* or *diſcretion* of the *Commander*. Nevertheleſſe, before I ſhew the *firing*, obſerve theſe words of Command, which produce the Figure.

Wheele your flanks into the front,
Face to your leader.

The broad fronted Battell.

Front.

S m m m m m S m m m m m m m m m m S m m m m m S
m m m m m m m m m m

themselves as before. Having *fired* once or twice over this way, a second way may be, to place themselves in the *reere* of their Pikes; either *standing*, or *advancing:* the Pikemen in the meane time, clouding the cleere skie, with their *ayrie Armorie*. The Muskettiers having all *given fire*, and placed themselves in the *reere:* if need bee, the Pikes may *close* their *divisions*, and *charge over hand:* and if the enemy shall still presse forwards, the Pikes may *charge* at the *foot:* the Muskettiers *giving fire over them, &c.*

For *reducement*, there are divers waies by *firings*; but because I would make every thing so plaine and easie, that those that *reade* for *instruction*, may receive *benefit*, it hath caused me to *reduce* each figure by it selfe: and not to multiply one upon another, whereby to make them too *ambiguous*. And therefore, if you make this Figure by *wheeling your flankes into the front*; and then *fire*, as aforesaid: the *reducement* may be, either * to *fire* them over againe, and so to *fall* into their former places: and then to *wheele* your *flankes* into the *front* againe, and lastly, *face about* to the *right:* and they will be as before. Or else, if you would reduce them without giving fire over againe, then command your Muskettiers to *double your front by division:* that done, *wheele both flankes into the reere:* then *face* to your *leader*, and command your Muskettiers to *double* your *front* by *division* againe: and they are as at first. If I should proceed to shew the many and sundry wayes of *firings*, which may be done in *front*; my Booke had need to have as many

* Note that the second firing will cause the body to face to the reer, which then becomes a front accidentall, and is the cause that the same command reduceth the figure which first made it.

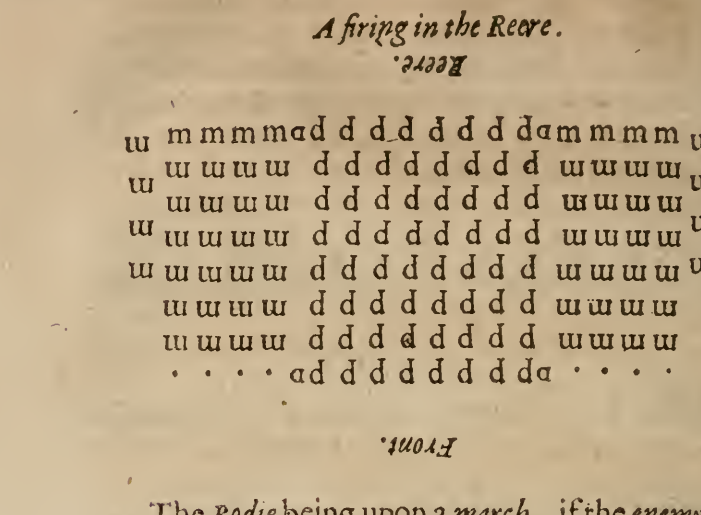
leaves, as *lines*: and yet all too little. But that I may keepe my selfe to my *promise*, and my *Booke* to its *compasse*: I will next come to shew some *firings in the reere*: and amongst my *divisionall firings*, I shall insert some other sorts of *front firings*, which here I have omitted.

Chap. LXXX.

Of dismarching, or firing in the Reere: the severall wayes, and how they ought to be performed.

HAving so long maintained *Battaile* in the front, I will now *face* them *about*, and see how they will behave themselves upon their *firings* in the *reere*. Which kinde of *firings*, may be very *beneficiall* and *serviceable*; many wayes. For by keeping an orderly *march*, and *firing* in the *reere*, the eager *enemy*, (by a too hasty pursuit) may be *disordered*. Or if it so happen (as many times it doth) that you have a *disadvantagious* place to imbattell on; by this *firing* you may *march away*: still preserving your *order* and *array*, untill you have brought your adversary into some ambushment, or such like inconvenience. For the manner of comming to the *firing*, it must either be by *facing about*, *wheeling about*, or *countermarching*: the Pikes are to be shouldered. The figure followeth.

A firing in the Reere.



The *Bodie* being upon a *march*, if the *enemy* appeare in the *Reere*; let the *laſt ranke* of *Muskettiers*, *face about*, and *give fire*, *wheeling off*, by *diviſion*, *file-wiſe marching up* toward the *Front*, and there placing themſelues before the *foremoſt ranke* of *Muskettiers:* (the *outmoſt* man of each *ranke*, being the *leader up* of thoſe which have *fired*) where firſt taking their places on the *outſide*, the reſt *wheeling about* them, and *ranking even* with them on the *inſide*; ever obſerving, that they *ranke even* with the *ſecond ranke* of *pikes*. The reſt of the *Muskettiers* alſo doing the like: and in this manner to continue the *firing*, as occaſion ſhall require. Nevertheleſſe, of all the *figures* and *firings*, that ever I have ſeene, this hath beene the *worſt* performed in all places; which might eaſily be amended, if the *Souldiers* would obſerve this following *order* in their execution: namely, when the *laſt ranke* of *Muskettiers* have

Note upon all firings in the Reere, *Blow your coale*; ſtepping forwards with your right foot. Open your pan, ſtepping forwards with your left foot *Preſent* to the *Reere*, *ſtepping* forwards with your right foot

have *presented* to the *Reere*, and are *giving of fire*; the *ranke* which *marched* next before them, do then *blow*, *open*, and *present*, at three *motions*: still keeping along *even with the Body*, untill that, (lastly) they *present* to the *Reere*; by which time, the *ranke* that *last fired*, will be *wheeled away*. The next *ranke*, so soone as the other hath *presented*, is likewise at 3. *motions*, to do the same: and so, successively, for all the rest; every *ranke* observing, upon each *ranks firing*, to *loose* one; and to *march* one *ranke* neerer, to the *reere* of the Battell: that so that part, may still be kept *absolute*.

This *giving* of *fire* towards the *reere* for *service*, is to be continued; according to the qualitie of the *place*, the *occasion* for *fight*; and the *discretion* of the *Commander*. In *exercise*, we commonly do it but once over; and then (if you please you may make *Alte*) and *face* your *Bodie about*, *giving fire* over againe: and *charging* your *pikes* upon it: if need so requireth. Notwithstanding, if the *horse* shall still continue to pursue you in the *reere*, you having gained some *strait* or *place* of *advantage*, may *wheele* your *flanks* into the *Front*, then *face* to the *reere*, and with your *charged pikes*, defend your *Musket tiers*: which (the *body* being so *wheeled*) will be in the *reere*. The *body* standing in this *forme*, the *Musket-tiers* may *sleeve up* by way of *Extraduction*. The *manner*, you may perceive in the *Chapter* which treats of that *figure*. If the horse still presse forwards, cause the *pikes* to *charge* at the *foot*; the *Musket tiers giving fire over them*, as in the *Convex-halfe Moone*. Lastly, to *reduce* them, having thus *fired*,

command

command them to *wheele their flanks into the fron*, and to *face about* after their *proper file-leaders*, and they are *reduced*.

Sometimes, we *give fire* in the *reere*: having all our *Musketiers marching* in the *reere* of the pikes. For the *manner* of the *motion*, it is as before: but for *placing* of the men, after they have *fired*; it may be different. As, to *wheele off by division*, placing themselues in the *front* of the *Musketiers*, next behinde the *reere* of pikes. Or if the *body* be large, to *wheele all off to the right, through Intervals*: and so to *march into the front of pikes*. Or else, they may *wheele off by division*, *flanke their pikes*, and so *fire over againe*, as before. If you have brought your *Musketiers* (by *firing*) to the *Reere*, before the *front* of *pikes*; then to *reduce* them, you may either *wheele* the *body* about, and *give fire* in *front*, causing your *Musketiers* to *fall off* by *division*, and to *flanke* their pikes, as you may perceive by the *figure* of the *Demie-hearse*. Or else, if you will *reduce* them without a *firing*, cause your *Musketiers* to *open to the right and left*: and the *pikes to march up in the miast*: after which, *facing* all to your *Leader*, they are as at first.

I might have shewne a Figure for each of these severall *firings* in the *reere*: which would have delivered them with more variety: but I conceive that this here already expreſt, may suffice: especially this being the ground of what may be spoken. Concerning *firings* in this nature, many men are of many mindes, about this *firing in the reere*. Some will have it, that the *last ranke*, shall at one *motion*, *face*

face to the *reere:* and there *preſent*, and *give fire*. Others will have it at two *motions*; but either of them have their inconveniences. For however they pretend a more *ſudden execution*, they are deceived: for would they make tryall, by cauſing the Muskettiers of one of the *flanks*, to *give fire* at one *motion*; and the Muskettiers of the other *flanke*, at three *motions*, (as I have here ſet downe) they ſhould ſoone finde, that the *firing* upon three *motions* were the beſt: and that the other would be caſt ſo farre behinde their *body*, that they would be in ſome danger to be *cut off*. Beſides this, they are *longer* in *clearing* themſelves from their owne men, which all the whilſt muſt *ſtay*, untill they are *marched off:* or elſe *kill* them, in ſtead of the *enemy*, whereas in this other *firing* upon three *motions*, they ſtill *keepe along* with their *Body*, doing their *execution* more ſuddenly and more ſafely. Nevertheleſſe, there be many ſo much wedded to their own wilfull opinion, that they will more willingly perſiſt in knowne *errour*, then be ſeene to alter what they have ſeemed to maintaine. But leaving ſuch to *ſteere* by their owne *compaſſe*, I will here conclude my *firing* in the *reere*. And the next I ſhew, ſhall be *firings in flanks:* to which purpoſe, I *paſſe* all my Muskettiers to the *right flanke*. The words of direction for it, are theſe.

Muskettiers of the right flanke, open to the right, or face to the right, and march. When they have opened to a ſufficient diſtance, then ſtand.

Muskettiers of the left flanke, paſſe through betweene your rankes of Pikes, to the intervalle on the right flanke: then ſtand, and face all to your leader.

Chap. LXXXI.

Of firings in flanke, in generall; and more particularly, of the gathering firing.

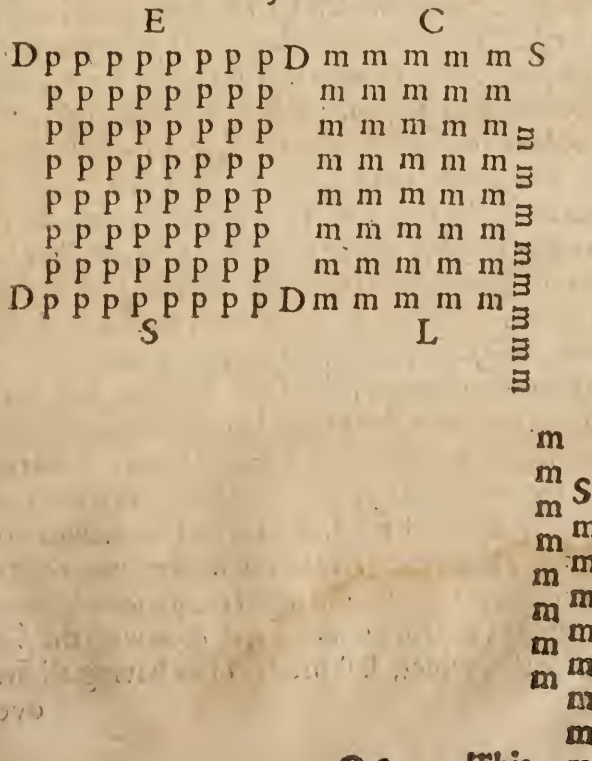
THe Muskettiers being all on the *right flanke*, (as in the last Chapter is directed) it would be needlesse to make a Figure, whereby to demonstrate the *standing* of the *body*: seeing that none can be so ignorant, but must needs know that all the Muskettiers being upon the *right*, the Pikes must be upon the *left*. Nevertheless, I shall endeavour to shew what is meant by *firing in flankes*. Which (for the generall) are of these two kindes. The *first* is, when the *enemy skirmisheth with us in flank as we march*: the other, when as by some *sudden attempt* or *ambushment*, the *whole body* is *engaged*, and so forced to *stand*, and to *face to the right*, or *left*; or both. By which *facings*, the *flanks* become *fronts accidentall*, and their *firings* wil be after the same manner of the *firings in front*. Wherefore seeing I have already spoken sufficiently of them, I will now shew *firings in flanke*, marching: the particulars whereof, are as followeth. The first is for the outmost file to give *fire*, and stand untill the next file have fired, which by some is called the *gathering firing*. Secondly, *firings* in *flanke*, and *leading* them up, between the Muskettiers and Pikes *firing*; in *flanke*, being *led off* by

by the *bringers up*: *firings* in *flanke*, *sleeving up* on the contrary *flanke* of Pikes: *firing* in *flanke*, and drawing them up betweene the *innermost files* of Pikes. All these *firings* in flanke, are to be performed upon a *march*, the Pikes are to be *shouldered*. Our first *firing* in *flanke*, followeth.

The Command is,

Musketiers, give fire to the right: and gather up your files.

Front of the march.


S
E
C
D p p p p p p p p D m m m m m S
p p p p p p p p m m m m m
p p p p p p p p m m m m m
p p p p p p p p m m m m m
p p p p p p p p m m m m m
p p p p p p p p m m m m m
p p p p p p p p m m m m m
D p p p p p p p p D m m m m m
S
L
m m m m m

This kinde of *firing* on the flanke, I have ſeene and knowne uſed, by many good and able ſouldiers. Nevertheleſſe, in my opinion, the men ſtand in a great deale of danger, when having *given fire*, they can doe no good; but ſtand like ſo many markes for their *enemies* ſhot. Notwithſtanding, it may be that ſuch whom I have frequently ſeene to uſe it in their practiſe, may be able to render good reaſons for the *ſervice*; though as yet I cannot conceive it. I will therefore ſurceaſe any further proſecution my opinions, and ſhew the manner of execution: which is to be performed as followeth. The Command being, to *give fire to the right*, preſently the *outermoſt file* to the *right*, *faceth* outward, and *preſents*: the reſt of the *body*, ſtill *marching* forwards. Then the *preſented file*, *gives fire*, and *ſtands facing* againe to their firſt front. By that time, the *body* will be marched cleere of the *ſtanding file*, then the next *outermoſt file*, *preſents* and *fires*; in like manner: the *body marching* as before. Having fired, they in like manner *face* to their firſt front, and *ſtand*; a *Serjeant* leading up the file, that firſt fired on the *out ſide* of the file that laſt fired. Then they both *ſtand* together, untill the third file hath *given fire* after the ſame manner. And then the *Serjeant* leads up the two files, even with the third, which laſt fired. And after this manner, the files of Musketiers *face* to the flanke: and give fire, ſucceſſively: and ſtand, untill the *Serjeant* leads up the reſt of the files which fired, *even* with the *front* of the file, which laſt fired. Thus having all fired over,

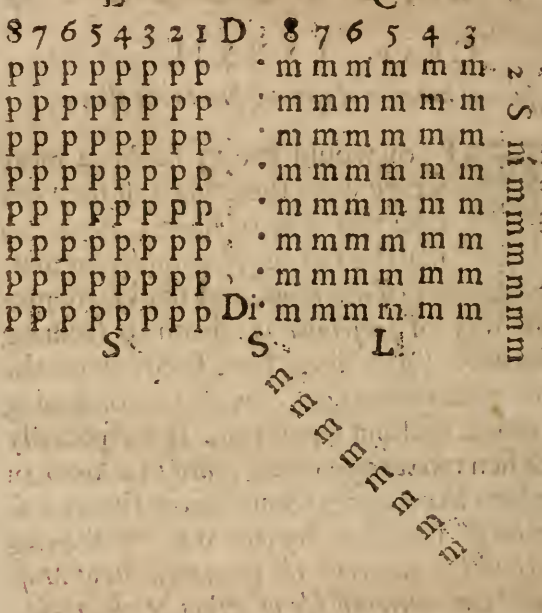
over, they are to *march up* againe, *even* with the *front* of Pikes, and this *reduceth* them, as at first.

CHAP. LXXXII.

The second manner of giving fire to the flanke.

IF you would fire in flanke, a more secure way, then that last shewne: take this way of firing. And this shall be full as *serviceable*, for matter of *execution*, and shall farre precede it, in way of *preservation*: both in securing the Muskettiers (after they have fired) from the danger of their *enemies shot*: as also in continuing the *body* intire, without separation. It is especially usefull, when two *enemies are divided by a River*, or by some such like meanes secured from the *incursions* of the *horse*. For then, by this way of *drawing the Muskettiers up betweene the innermost file of Muskettiers*, and the *outermost file of Pikes to the right*: your *Battaile* may be continued, according to the *occasion* or the *Commanders discretion*. The Figure followeth. The Command is,

Muskettiers, give fire in flanke: marching up betweene the Pikes and Muskets.



The way to performe this *motion* of firing, is as followeth. The *outermost* file being commanded to *face to the right*, and *present*: the rest of the *body marcheth* away (as in the other Figure) and the standing file, gives fire. This done, and that the *body* is *marched cleere* of the standing file; the next file *presents to the right*: & the file that first gave fire, *faceth* to the *first front*, and is led by a *Sergeant*, *crosse* the

the *reere* of Muskettiers, and up betweene the Muskets and Pikes; the Muskettiers are ſtill to open to *the right*, as they *march*, that ſo there may be room for one file to *march* up betweene them, and the *pikes*. And ſo (ſucceſſively) each file having fired *marcheth* up next unto the *right flanke* of *pikes*. When all your Muskettiers have *given fire* once over, they are *reduced* as at the firſt. The *battell* may be continued, at diſcretion. The next firing in flanke (for the *matter* of firing it ſelfe) will be all one with this: but for the *manner* of the *wheeling off*, and placing them, it will differ.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

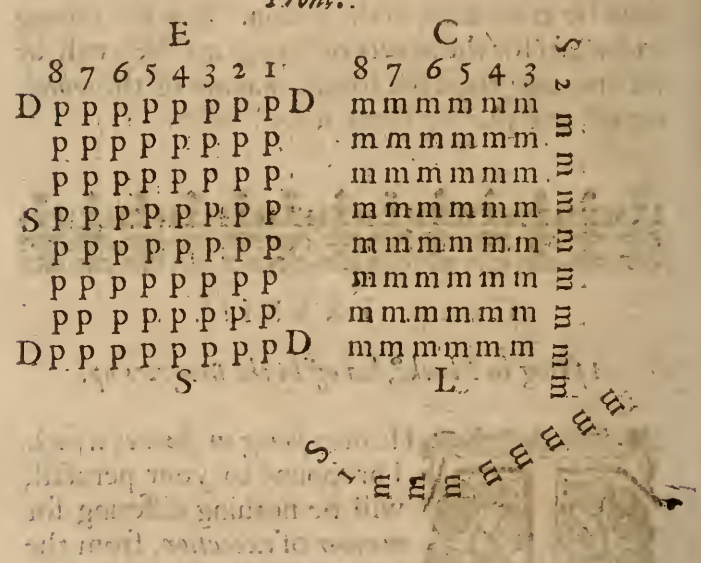
A firing in Flanke, led off by the Bringers up.

THe next *firing in flanke*, which I propound to your peruſall, will be nothing differing for *manner* of *execution*, from the *firings* in *Flanke*; formerly ſhewed. The onely *difference* ariſing betweene them, is, that the *other files* of *Muskettiers*, after that they had *given fire*, were *led off* by their *proper file-leaders*; and this, to the contrary, muſt be *led off* by their *Bringers-up*. And this, indeed, if the *body* be upon a *ſlow march*, is the *readieſt* and *quickeſt* way: and doth

more speedily *secure* the *Muskettiers*, after that they have *given fire*. The *words* of *Command* and direction, which produce the *firing*, are as followeth.

Muskettiers, give fire to the Right: wheeling off, after your Bringers up; and placing your selues betweene your Divisions.

Front.


E
C
8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
8 7 6 5 4 3
D p p p p p p p p D
m m m m m m
p p p p p p p p
m m m m m m
p p p p p p p p
m m m m m m
S p p p p p p p p
m m m m m m
p p p p p p p p
m m m m m m
p p p p p p p p
m m m m m m
p p p p p p p p
m m m m m m
D p p p p p p p p D
m m m m m m
S
L

For the *manner* of *execution*, or way to performe this *firing*, it is as followeth. The *body* must be conceived to be *marching*; upon all these *firings in flanke:* and that with their *pikes shouldered*. This being presupposed, the *Command* being given, the *outmost-file presents* to the *right*, and *gives fire:* then *faceth* to the *right*, after their *bringers up*; who *leadeth* them *off*, *crosse the reere of Muskettiers, march-*

ing

ing them up betweene the *diuisions*, the *bringers up* supplying the *file-leaders* place; and *marching euen* in *ranke* in the *front*, with the *file-leaders*; the *file-leader* of the same *file*, becomming the *bringer up* in the *Reere*. The *files* of *Musketiers*, or *Pikes* (according as the *command* shall be given) are as they *march*, to *open*; thereby giving way to the *Musketiers*, after they have *fired*; to *come up* betweene the *diuisions*, and so soone as the *first file* that *fired*, is *cleare* from the *right flanke*; the *second file*, *presents* and *fires*: in like manner *wheeling off*, as before, and *marching up* betweene the *Pikes* and *Musketiers*; every *file*, successively, *giving fire*, and *wheeling off* as aforesaid. This firing may be performed, *once*, *twice*, or *oftener ouer*, according to the discretion of the *Commander*. Nevertheless, if it be *twice* performed, the men are *reduced* as at first; every man hauing his *right* place. If you *fire* them but *once*, or *thrice* (or any odde number of times) over, then you must *countermarch* your *files* of *Musketiers* to *reduce* them. There is another way for the *bringers up* to *wheele off*, and each of them to *leade off* his *file*; untill he comes to the *Reere* of the *diuision* which is betweene the *Muskets* and the *Pikes*; and there he is to *stand*, and *ranke* with the *bringers up*, the rest that follow, *passing* on forwards, by way of *Introduction*, and every man *ranking* before him, that was his *leader* in the *wheeling off*; untill the *proper file-leader* be come into his place againe. And after this way, they may *give fire*; each *firing* being his owne *reducement*.

CHAP.

Chap. LXXXIIII.

The difference betweene Firings in Flanke, marching: and of bringing the Muskettiers on the outside of the Pikes.

ALL, or the most part of the *firings in flanke*, which are performed *marching*; in point of *execution*, are the same: the especiall *difference* betweene them, being either in the *manner* of the *wheeling off*, after they have *fired*, or in the *materiall placing* them, whereby to make them more *offensive* or *defensive*. And all this appeareth by this next following *firing*: which is to be used at such time and place, when as there may be doubt of the *enemies horse*: And, therefore, for the more securitie of the *Muskettiers* having fired; they are to be *drawne up* on the *outer-side* of the *left flanke*: if haply there may be some *hedge*, *ditch*, *river*, *hill*, *marish*, *wood*, or such like convenient *safeguard*; whereby to shroud them from the *furie* and *violence* of the *horse*; that so the *pikes* making *Alt*, and *facing* to the *enemy*, may *charge*, and with their *armed points* (strongly and closely coucht) receive and abate the furie of the first *shocke*. And if need be, the pikes may all *charge* at the foot, *closely serried* together, with their *swords* drawne, and the Muskettiers may *give fire* over them. The *manner*, you may perceive in the figure

figure of the *Convex halfe-moone*. But left I *anticipate* my selfe, in shewing the use: I will returne to shewthe *manner* of the firing, intended by this following *Figure*. Onely first take the *words* of command and direction, which are as followeth.

Muskettiers, give fire to the Right: placing your selues on the outside of the left Flanke of Pikes.

Front.

E C

S 1 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 8 7 6 5 4

m D p p p p p p p p D m m m m m S

m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m m

m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m m

m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m m

m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m m

m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m m

m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m m

m D p p p p p p p p D m m m m m m

S L S

Reere.

m m m m m m m m

The *outermost files* having *presented* to the *right*; the rest of the *body* continueth the march, whilest they in the meane time, are *giving fire*. Which being done, and the *body cleere*, the *next outermost file*, *presents*;

presents, the *file* that *last fired*, in the interim, *facing to the left after their proper file-leader*; who *leadeth* them *crosse* the *reere* (both of Muskets and Pikes) a pretty round pace; *sleeving* up on the out side of the *left flanke* of Pikes. The *next file* having, in like manner, *fired*; doth also *troupe up* on the *out side* of the *file*, *led off* before every *file*; *giving fire*, and doing the like. When all have *given fire*, and are *cleered* away, then the Pikes may charge. Which is very necessary; if but to accustome the *Souldiers* unto in times of *exercise*, both for *charging* on, and for *retreiting*, as also to *push* with their Pikes, that so by *practise* they may be able to doe it, orderly, either way: still keeping their *order* and *array*. Having *given fire* upon the *right flanke*, and *drawne* all your Musketiers in this manner to the *left flanke*, if you will cause them to *give fire* on the *left flanke*, and *bring* them backe againe to the *right flanke*: they will be *reduced*. Or if you would *reduce* them without a *firing*, then either *passe* your Musketiers through between your rankes of Pikes, or else, let your whole *division* of Musketiers, bee drawne *crosse* either the *front* or *reere* of Pikes, into their places: or by *division* (if you please) your Musketiers, also, may *give fire* in *flanke*: the *first fire*, *sleeving* on the *left flanke*: the rest of the *files*, still falling betweene the Pikes: and the Musketiers which *wheeled* off the *last* before them. And this is also a very good *firing*, and may be *reduced* with doing the like backe againe: and many other waies, they may also *fall off* after the manner of the *figure* last shewn: being *led* by their *bringers up*, either into

into the *front*, or elſe after the manner as is diſcourſed in the latter end of the laſt *Chapter*. But I endeavour, all I may, to contract my matter; leſt my *volume* ſhould exceed my intent. And therefore I will ſhew but one *firing* more in *flanke*, upon a *march*: wherewith I will conclude theſe ſorts of *firings*.

Chap. LXXXV.

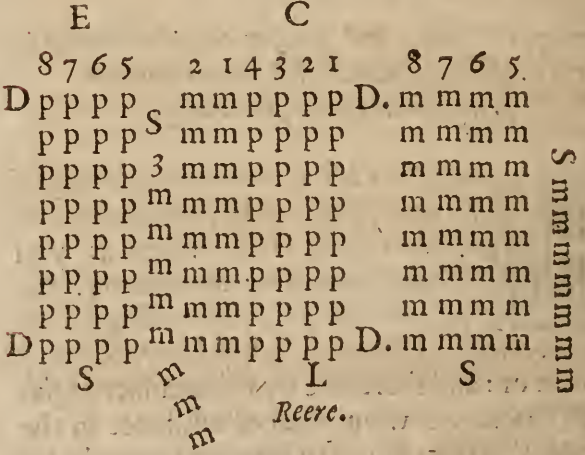
Of Firing in Flanke: and placing the Muskettiers in the midſt of the Battell of Pikes: with other firings from thence proceeding.

Firing in *Flanke*, and *bringing* them *off* betweene the midſt of *pikes*; is to be uſed at ſuch time, when as you would *ſecure your Muskettiers*: the place (otherwiſe) affoording no *naturall convenience* of ſuccour, ſuch as I have formerly ſpoken of: and therefore by this manner of *falling off*, where we want *naturall* aſſiſtance in the *ſcituation*; there, *art* ought to ſupply us, namely, by contriving to bring up the *Muskettiers* betweene the *pikes*; and ſo to defend them from the furie of the *horſe*. And, if need be, you may *draw* 3. or 4. *files* of *pikes* (more or leſſe, according to your *number* or the *danger*) *croſſe* the *Muskets*, both in *front* and *reere*, which are in the midſt betweene the *pikes*, which will as well preſerve the *Muskettiers* in

in *front* and *reere*, as in *flanks*. But leaving further to discourse, what may be done; I will now shew how this is to be done. Onely first take the *words* of *Command* and direction for the *firing*, as followeth.

Muskettiers, give fire to the Right: Marching up betweene the midst of Pikes.

Front.


E
C
8 7 6 5
2 1 4 3 2 1
8 7 6 5
D p p p p
m m p p p p p D.
m m m m
p p p p S
m m p p p p
m m m m
p p p p 3
m m p p p p
m m m m
p p p p m
m m p p p p
m m m m
p p p p m
m m p p p p
m m m m
p p p p m
m m p p p p
m m m m
p p p p m
m m p p p p
m m m m
D p p p p m
m m p p p p p D.
m m m m
S m m m m m m m m m m m m
S
m
m
L
Reere.

The *Command* being given, for the *outermost-file* to *present* to the *right* (as formerly in the other *firings* in *flanke*) the rest of the *body* still *marcheth* on: untill that the *outermost-file* hath *fired*, and is *faced* to the *left* againe: following their *leader*. He now leading them *off* to the *left*, *marcheth up* betweene the *middlemost-files* of *pikes*: who are then to *open* to

to the *right* and *left*: so to give them roome, to *march up* betweene them. In the meane time, the *next file* having *given fire, wheeleth off*: in like manner *marching up* on the *left* of the *files*, which *fired* last before them. And so, successively, for all the rest of the *files* of *Musketiers*, all which are to *give fire*, and to *wheele off*, as before: placing themselues still on the *left* of the *files* which *last fired*. Wherein is still to be noted, that the *files* are still to *open* to the *right* and *left*: and that for the receiving of the *Musketiers*, after that they have *given fire*. This *firing* (as all other the *firings* in *flanke*) may as well be *led off* by their *Bringers up*, as by the *file-leaders*: and then the *reducements* will be answerable. The *Musketiers* having all *fired*; the *pikes* may *charge*, at discretion. The *Bow-pike-men*, which are in the *reere* of the *Musketiers*, in the meane time not sparing to send their *showers* of *arrows*, amongst the thickest of their enemies, and if need require, the *front* of *pikes charging* at the *foot*, with their swords drawne; the *Musketiers* may *give fire over them, ranke* after *ranke*; for the *formost ranks* having *fired*, may *kneele* upon the ground; and there *make ready* againe: untill the other *ranks* behinde them, have likewise *given fire*. After this manner, the *Battell* may be continued: according as occasion shall require. For *reducement*, and to bring the *Musketiers* into both *flanks* againe, as they were before I began these *firings* in *flank*; *command* your *pikes* to *face inward*; and your *Musketiers* to the *right* and *left outward*, and so to passe through and *interchange ground*; then *facing* them to their *leader*, they will be

be *reduced*, as at the firſt. I would have the ingenious *Reader* to conceive, that all theſe *firings* in *flanke*, may as eaſily be performed to the *left*: and with the ſame *words*. Onely the *words* of *right*, muſt be changed for *left*: and *left* for *right*. I might have further enlarged my ſelfe upon *Firings* in *flanke*: but theſe already expreſt, may ſuffice for to inſtruct the ignorant. As for the skilfull and experter ſort of *Souldiers*, I ſhall rather requeſt their approbation, then preſume to write ought, which may ſeeme to paſſe me with the leaſt conceit, tending to their inſtructions. Wherefore, for the further proſecution of my intended diſcouſe, I will next ſhew ſome *diviſionall firings*. And (for *methods* ſake) I will firſt begin with *Firings in Front and Reere*: which may be performed either upon a *march*, or *ſtand*. And to that end, ſuppoſe your Muskettiers to *march* all in *front*, and *reere*. Nevertheleſſe, becauſe it will not be amiſſe, to ſhew with what *words* of *command*, or *direction* the Muskettiers may be brought thither: therefore take notice from what part of the *body* they are brought. And if they be in the *midſt* (as in this laſt figure of *Firing* in *flank*) then *command* the *halfe-files* of the Muskettiers, to *face about*: which done, let the *pikes ſtand*, and the Muskettiers *march*; untill they are *cleare* both of *front* and *reere* of *pikes*; then let them *ſtand*; and *face* to their *leader*: which being done, your *battell* will ſtand in *forme* of an *hollow ſquare*. In which *hollow*, may be conveyed any *carriage*, or ſuch like. But if you will not have your *battell hollow*; then *command* your pikes to *cloſe* their *diviſions*; and the Musket-

tiers

tiers will be all in *front* and *reere*. If your *Musket-tiers* be on the *flanke*, and you would bring them into the *front* and *reere*; then after the same manner let the *halfe-files* of *Muskettiers face* to the *reere:* and then both *halfe-files* of the *front* & *reere*, march untill they are *cleare* of the *Angular pikemen*. This done, let them *face in opposition*, and *close* their *divisions:* after which, having *faced* all to their *leader*, they will be *rightly* placed: namely, the *front-halfe-files* of *Muskettiers* before the *front* of *pikes*; and the *reere-halfe-files* of *Muskettiers* behinde the *reere* of *pikes*. Thus will the *figure* of *battell* be in *forme* of an *Hearse*; and the Muskettiers, be ready to *give fire* to the *front* and *reere:* either *marching*, or *standing*. But before I begin my *divisionall firings*, I would intreat you not to expect, that I should *reduce* every *particular firing*, so soone as it is performed; as I have done by these hitherto shewed, but rather let it be sutable to your likings, that I *reduce firings* by *firings:* sometimes *giving fire* upon a *march:* sometimes upon a *stand:* sometimes, to the *front* and *reere*; sometimes, to both *flanks*. I do the rather desire to go on in this way, because thereby I may expresse farre more matter, in fewer lines and shorter time.

Chap. LXXXVI.

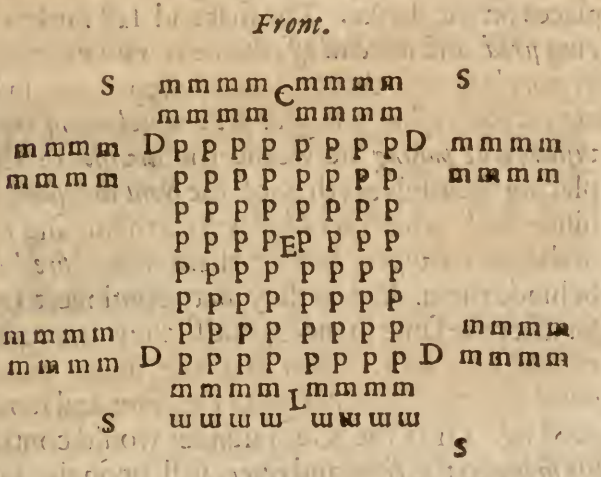
Of firing to the front and reere, upon a march.

The Musketiers being all placed in the *front* and *reere*, (according to the *directions* in the last *Chapter*) I will now shew the *manner* of *firing* to the *front* and *reere*, upon a *march*. Which however that it may bee rare, and seldome usefull in *service*: yet it must needs be excellent for practise. For by the often using it, the *Souldier* may be made capable of any *firing*: The Pikes, (you are to understand) are to be *shouldered*. The Command for the *firing* is.

Muske-

Muskettiers, give fire to the front and reere: and flanke your Pikes.

Front.



Reere.

The Command being given (as above ſaid) to *give fire* to the *front* and *reere*; the *firſt ranke preſents*; the *laſt ranke, faceth about* to the *reere*, and doth the like: and ſo both *giving fire* together, *wheele off* by *diviſion*. The one halfe of the ranke, following after the *right hand man* of the ſame ranke; the other halfe, after the *left hand man*, who leads them *cloſe* downe by the ſide or flanke of the Muskettiers, untill they come to the Pikes. The *firſt ranke* of Muskettiers, now ranking even with the firſt rank of Pikes, the laſt ranke of Muskets, with the laſt ranke of Pikes, leaving a ſufficient *intervalle* be-

twixt them and their Pikes, for the other Musketiers to *march betweene*. And here you must note, that he that was *outermost* when they *gave fire*, must likewise be *outermost*, when they have taken their places on the flanke. The first and last rankes having *fired*, and *wheeled off*, the next rankes, (the *body marching* on, three or foure steps) are in like manner to *present*, and *give fire*: *wheeling off* by *division*; and *passing* betweene the *divisions*: there placing themselves; they of the *front division*, behinde those which *fired last* before them; and they of the *reere division*, before them which *fired last*, behinde them. And so they may continue to *give fire* after the same manner; untill they have all *given fire*, *once over*. Then may the body make a *stand*, and the Pikes *charge* to the *front* and *reere*, if need be. Or if the Commander would continue his *firing* to the *front* and *reere*, still upon the same figure: Then let the Musketiers of the *front*, place themselves (after they have *given fire*) behinde the Musketiers of their owne *division*: those of the *reere division* placing themselves betwixt the *reere* of Pikes, and the Muskets of their *owne division*: and so the *body* moving but slowly forwards, they may continue the *firing*. Having *given fire* to the *front* and *reere*, and *flanked* their Pikes: if the *occasion* offer, or the Commander please; they may *give fire* to the *front* and *reere*, upon that Figure which indeed I hold the better, as you may perceive in the ensuing Chapter.

Chap.

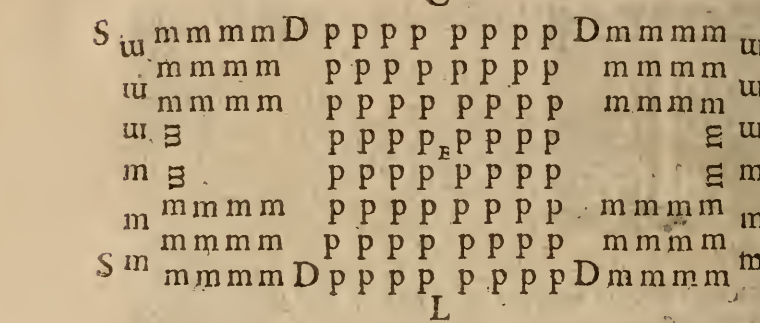
CHAP. LXXXVII.

A second way of firing to the front and reere.

THis second way of *firing* to the *front* and *reere* upon a *march*, may easily be performed; if the Souldiers bee well and often instructed. Without which, all matters in the *Art militarie* will seeme *difficult*: and by which, all things will be made *facile* and *easie*. I could instance in divers *motions* and *figures*, by some reputed *superfluous niceties*, which were the true *uses* knowne to the Commander, and the *way* to *execute*, to the *Souldier*, would be found to be of *singular* good *service*. Nevertheless, because to the ignorant nothing beyond their capacities may seeme *excellent*; many good and serviceable *motions* are slighted, and not accounted fit for service. But I could well wish, that some good course might be taken, that the *Souldiers* of our *trayned Bands* might have a little oftener *practise*; that so they might be able (at least in some reasonable way) to understand and *exercise*, what shall bee commanded them. But I have strayed from the matter. And therefore take these words of *Command* and *direction*: which being orderly executed, produce this following *firing*.

Musketiers, give fire to the front and reere; placing your selves betweene your Divisions.

Front.



Reere.

The way to performe this *firing*, is as followeth; the Command being given, the *first ranke presents* to the *front*, the *last ranke* of Muskettiers, *facing about*, and doing the like, towards the *reere*: This done, they both *give fire*; *wheeling off* by *division*; and place themselves betweene the Muskettiers of their *divisions*. Those, namely, which were of the *front halfe files*, *falling* into the *reere* of their *owne division*; those of the *reere halfe files* (contrariwise) *falling* before their *halfe file leaders*, and *ranking even* with the *halfe file leaders* of Pikes; the *next rankes*, successively, *firing*, and *wheeling off*, after the same manner. Having fired, *once over*, they are *reduced*; every man to his place. These two last *firings*

rings to be performed upon a *march*, would seeme very difficult to unexperienced *Souldiers*: but by often *exercising*, they may be made capable of these, or of any other.

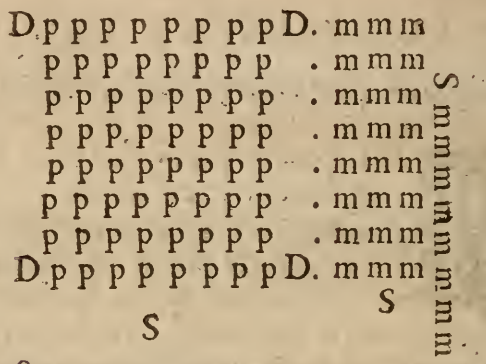
Chap. LXXXVIII.

A firing to the Reere and right flanke, marching.

HAving shewed *firings in front, reere*, and *flanke*, (some *marching*, some *standing*) I will shew one *firing* to the *reere* and *right flanke*, upon a *march*, which (without question) must needs be very *serviceable* at such times, as the *enemy* shall *skirmish* with the *body*, to annoy them in their *passage*, in *flanke* and *reere* at one time. I shall not need with *arguments* to inforce the usefulnesse of the *firing*, for none that knowes any thing in the *Art military*, but will ingeniously confesse that for some services, it must needs be necessary. You may (if you please) *give fire* to the *flanke* and *reere*: your Muskettiers being in their ordinary places, on the flankes of their Pikes. Nevertheless, a securer way for the Pikes, will be to *draw* the Musketiers from that *flanke*, which is in least danger; *crosse* the *reere* of Pike-men. And this shall be the way I will observe in this *firing*. The words of Command and *direction* for this *firing*, are as followeth.

Muskettiers, give fire to the right and reere: placing your ſelves betweene the Pikes, and your owne diviſions.

Front.


D p p p p p p p p D. m m m
p p p p p p p p . m m m
p p p p p p p p . m m m
p p p p p p p p . m m m
p p p p p p p p . m m m
p p p p p p p p . m m m
p p p p p p p p . m m m
D p p p p p p p p D. m m m
S
S m m m m m m m m
m m m m m m m m
m m m m m m m m
w w w w w w w w
S m m m m m m m m
S
Reere.

The Command being given, to *fire to the reere and right flanke*; the *outermoſt file* of Muskettiers, *preſents* to the *right*: and the laſt rank of Muskettiers *preſents* to the *reere*, and ſo both *give fire*. The reſt of the *Body*, in the meane time, *marching* a reaſonable pace. The *right hand* file, and *laſt ranke* having fired; the file *faceth* to the *left*, after their file-leader; and ſo *marcheth* up between the Muskettiers of the ſame *diviſion*, and the Pikes; the *ranke wheeling*

ling off to the *right*, and placing it ſelfe next after the *reere* of Pikes, and before the firſt *rank* of Muſkettiers of the ſame *diviſion*. If you pleaſe, you may make an *Intervalle* betweene the Muskettiers: that ſo part may *wheele off* to the *right*, on the out ſide, and the other part *wheele off* to the *right*, and *march* up betweene the *Intervalle* into their places. The firſt file and ranke that *preſented*, having given fire, and *wheeled cleere off the body*, the next file and ranke, *preſent* and give fire: after the ſame manner, *wheeling off*, and taking their places, as aforeſaid; and ſo ſucceſſively, the reſt (both files and rankes) give fire, obſerving the ſame order. And having given fire, *once*, *twice*, or *oftner* over, they are ſtill *reduced* to the ſame they were before the firing began. Then *draw* your Muskettiers from the *reere*, to the *left flanke* againe; and they will have their places as at firſt.

Chap. LXXXIX.

Of firing to both flankes, marching.

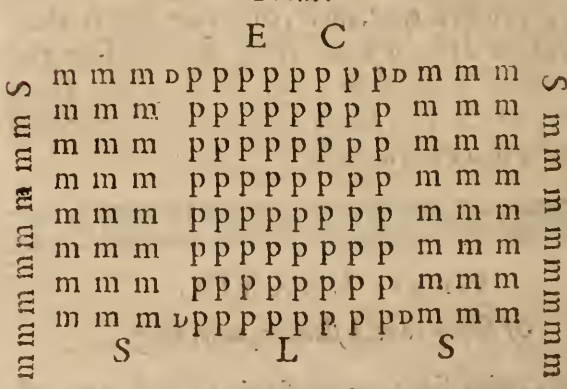
TO give fire to both flankes, upon a *march*; muſt needs be a *ſerviceable firing*, without exception: the *time*, *number*, *place*, and *ſtrength* of the *enemy*, being alwaies to be conſidered. which may ſometimes cauſe the Muskettiers (having fired) to *march up* betweene their *owne diviſions*, and the Pikes, as in this Figure. Or (ſometimes) betweene the *midſt* of the Pikes, the better

to

to ſecure them. Divers other ſuch like waies there likewiſe be, at the diſcretion of the Commander: and as the preſent *occaſion* ſhall require them. But becauſe I inſiſted (ſomewhat largely) upon the firings on the *right flanke*; I ſhall not need to ſhew them againe, by *diviſion* on both *flankes*; but will conclude them all in this one. The words of Command which produce the Figure, are as follow.

Muskettiers, give fire to both flankes; marching up betweene the Pikes and your owne diviſions.

Front.



Reere.

The *Command* being given, the *outermoſt file* (on each *flanke*) *preſents outward*: the reſt of the body ſtill continuing the *march*. The *preſented files* (in the interim) giving fire; then *facing* after their *proper file-leaders*, who *led* them up betweene the Muſkets of their *owne diviſions*, and the Pikes,) in the time of their *wheeling* away) the *next two outermoſt files*

files present, firing after the same manner, and *leading up* as before. The rest (successively) doing the like, untill they have fired all over: which brings them to their former places. The firing may be continued at discretion, each firing being its owne *reducement*. Nevertheless it may so fall out, that either through the fury of the *enemy*, *advantage*, or *disadvantage* of *ground* (or some such like *accident*) the *body* may be forced to make *Alt*, and to *face* to both *flanks*; and so with *fronts accidentall*, to maintaine the *fight*, *standing*. To which end, the *firing* in the succeeding *Chapter*, shal be of that sort. Therefore suppose the *body faced* to the *right* and *left*, preparing to *give fire*.

CHAP. XC.

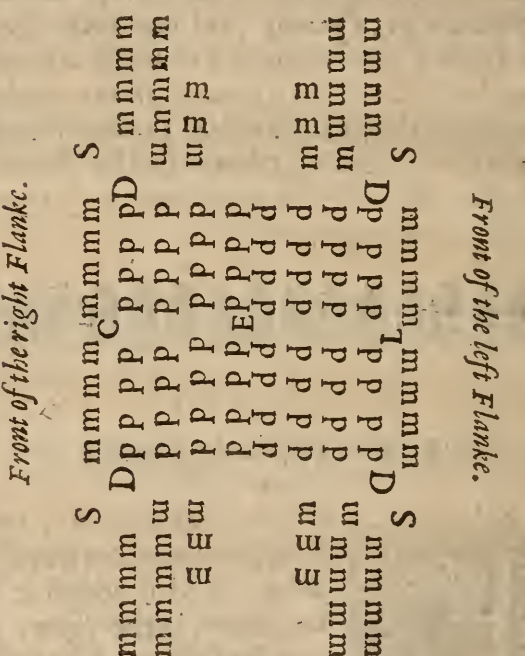
A firing to both Flanks, standing.

Firing to both *flanks*, upon a *stand*, is a good and serviceable *firing*. And although it shew but *thinne*, in the *figure*; yet it may be *substantiall* and usefull for the *field*: especially if there be a *larger proportion* of *number*, then I have made use of in my *formes* and *figures* of *Battell*. The *words* of *command* and direction, which produce the *figure*, are as followeth.

Advance

Advance your pikes, and stand. Face to the Right and Left. Muskettiers give fire; and flanke your Pikes.

Front of the March.



The *bodie* being *faced* to the *right* and *left*, the *formost ranks* of *Muskettiers* (which were the *outermost-files*) *present* and *give fire*; and then *wheele off* by

by *diuision*; *ranking even* with the *formost ranks* of *pikes*, and leaving sufficient *Intervals* for the rest of the Muskettiers to *march* betweene them and the Pikes. The next *ranke presenting* and *firing*, after the same manner, but not *advancing* forwards: onely firing upon the same ground; and *wheeling off* by *diuision*: afterwards *passing* downe betweene the *Intervals*, and so *ranke* after their *leaders*. It is herewithall to be noted, that they that were *outermost*, when they *gave fire*; are likewise to be so, when they have taken their *places*. If these *instructions* be not sufficient, turne backe to the *figure* of the *Demie-hearse*: where the *manner* of the *execution* is all one with *this*. All the *ranks* of *Muskettiers* having *fired*, and *wheeled off*, as before; the pikes (if need be) may *charge*, and the Muskettiers *give fire*, over againe: *wheeling off outward*, and placing themselues in the *reere* of their *owne diuisions*. Having *aduanced* your pikes, and *faced* your *body* to the *first front*, all your Muskettiers will be in *front* and *reere*. And then if you *face* your *halfe-files about*, and *give fire* after the same manner to the *front* and *reere*; Having *faced* them againe to their *first front*, they will be *reduced* (as at first) into their ordinary *square*. Nevertheless, I will *reduce* it by another firing, which was first inuented and shewed us, by that worthy *Citizen*, and excellent *Souldier*, Captaine *Henry Hutter*, now deceased: It is a *firing in front*, the *Muskettiers* of the *reere diuision*, *opening* to the *right* and *left*; and *receiuing* in the *flanks of pikes*, vntill the *leaders* of the *reere diuision* (who as then are the *halfe-file-leaders*) *ranke even* with the

front

front of *pikes*. The words of direction that produce the *figure*, follow in the next *Chapter*.

Chap. XCI.

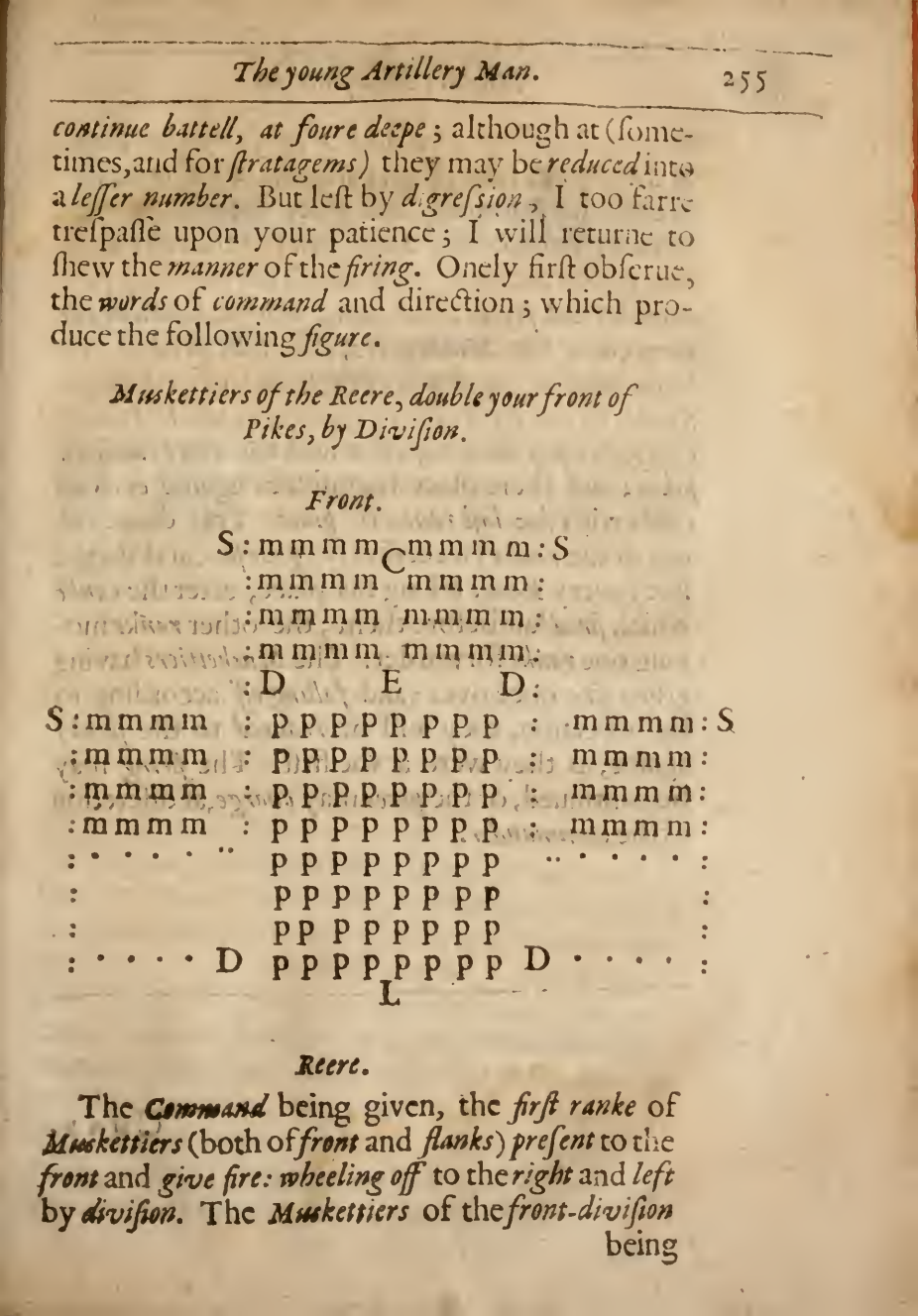
Captaine Wallers *Triple firing to the Front*.

THis *Triple firing to the Front*, hath had the approbation of good and well experienced *Souldiers*: who have all acknowledged it to be both *sollid* and *serviceable*. *Bringing many hands to fight, in very good order: the pikes being securely covered by their Muskettiers, in front.* Neither need *they* be idle in time of *battell*, if they have any *Bow-pike-men* amongst them: for that they may send their *whistling Archery* over their *Muskettiers heads*, without *offence* to their *friends*: though not without *dammage* to their *enemies*. If any carpe at the *depth* of the *Muskettiers* (either in this *figure*, or in any other in this *booke*) I shall request them to suspend their *censures*, and wisely to conceive by a little, what a great deale meaneth. My intent not being, to make my *booke monstrous*, by having *little leaves*, and *large figures*. Onely I desire with this *small number*, to shew the *nature* of severall *formes* and *figures* of *battell*; the *manner* of their *firings* and *wheelings off*; their *orderly placings*, and severall *wayes* of *reducement*: not having the least conceit, to induce any to beleeve, *that men are able long to*

continue

continue battell, at foure deepe; although at (sometimes, and for *stratagems*) they may be *reduced* into a *lesser number*. But left by *digression*, I too farre trespasse upon your patience; I will returne to shew the *manner* of the *firing*. Onely first obserue, the *words* of *command* and direction; which produce the following *figure*.

Musketiers of the Reere, double your front of Pikes, by Division.


Front.
S : m m m m m C m m m m m : S
: m m m m m m m m m m :
: m m m m m m m m m m :
: m m m m m m m m m m :
: D E D :
S : m m m m m : p p p p p p p p p : m m m m m : S
: m m m m m : p p p p p p p p p : m m m m m :
: m m m m m : p p p p p p p p p : m m m m m :
: m m m m m : p p p p p p p p p : m m m m m :
: p p p p p p p p p :
: p p p p p p p p p :
: p p p p p p p p p :
: D p p p p p p p p p D :
L
Reere.

The *Command* being given, the *first ranke* of *Musketiers* (both of *front* and *flanks*) *present* to the *front* and *give fire: wheeling off* to the *right* and *left* by *division*. The *Musketiers* of the *front-division* being

being *wheeled off* (as aforesaid) *close* by the *flanks* of their *owne Musketiers*, passe directly downe betweene the *Intervals*: and place themselues *even* in *ranke* behinde the *Musketiers* of the *reere division*, which are upon the flanks. This you may perceive by the *pricks*, that come downe *betweene the Intervals*: the *Musketiers*, also, that *fired* at the same time on the *flanks*; *wheele* also *off*; (the *right flanke*, to the *right*; the *left flanke*, to the *left*) *marching* directly downe, *even* with the *reere ranke* of *pikes*; and there place themselues againe *even* in *ranke* with the *last ranke* of *pikes*. This done, the rest of the *ranks* (successively) *give fire*, and do the like: every *Ranke* taking his place, after the *ranke* which *fired* last before them; the other *ranks* moving one *ranke* forwarder. The *Musketiers* having *given fire* once over; and *falling off* according to this direction, they will be *reduced* to the *flanks* againe, as they were at the first. The *firing* may be continued, or the *pikes* may *charge*, at discretion of the *Commander*.

CHAP.

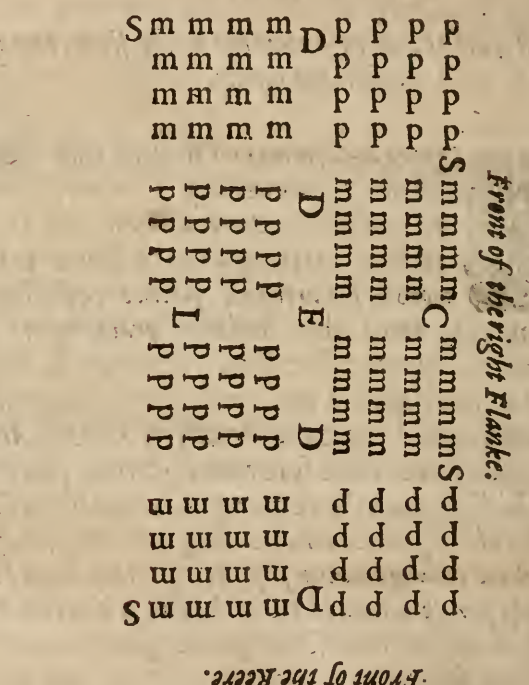
Chap. XCII.

A firing tripartite, doing execution to the front, reere, and right flanke.

Figures and *formes* of *Battell*, may bee infinite: according to the judgements of the *Commanders*, and the various workings of the divers *motions*: no *arte* nor *science* yeelding more content, unto the studious *practitioners*; none more honourable and beneficiall, for the good of our *Countrie*: none more neglected and lesse countenanced, then the *Practisers* of the *Art militarie*, nor none more screwed up in the places of their abiding, then those men this way affected. The rich *cubb'd gowne men*, holding it as a *maxime*, *that Souldiers (though never so poore) yet they must be taxed in the parish bookes like Gentlemen*. Thus much incouragement we have, for spending our money and our time for our Countries good, and this (in good time) I hope will be amended: but of this no more. The next *firing* being a *firing Tripartite*: doth *execution* to the *front*, *reere*, and *right flanke*, at one and the same time. For the *use*, I shall referre it to the judgement of the Iudicious: for the instruction, how it is to be made, the words of Command and direction shew it, which are as followeth.

Halfe rankes of the left, double your right flanke by division.

Front proper.



For the direction, looke backe to the 27. Chapter: which treats of this *doubling*. Onely remember to *face* the *divisions* that way which you intend they shall *give fire*.

For

For the manner of the *firing*, it is ordinary: the *foremoſt* Ranke of Muskettiers (on each part) having *fired*, they *wheele off* to the *right*, or to the *right* and *left*: (according as directions ſhall be given) placing themſelves in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions*; the *next ranks*, in the meane time, moving forwards into their *leaders ground*; there, in like manner, *firing*, *wheeling off*, and *placing* themſelves as before: the *reſt* of the *rankes*, ſucceſſively, doing the like. This *firing* may be continued, at pleaſure of the *Commander*. The Pikemen (as advantage may be given) in the *interim* either *porting*, *charging*, or *ſending* their fatall *ſhowers* amongſt the thickeſt of their *enemies*. Laſtly, for *reducement*, *face* them all to their *front proper*, then *Command*, *halfe rankes that doubled, to face to the left, and ſo to march into their places*. For further directions, turne backe to the 27. Chapter, which ſhewes the *reducement* of the aforegoing Figure, &c.

Chap. XCIII.

Of the Sconce Battell.

THe *Sconce Battell* is a Figure moſt properly fit for a whole *Regiment*; at leaſt for a larger proportion of *number*, then is here expreſt; it neither being *good* nor *ſafe* to divide a ſmal *Company*, into ſo many *diviſions* and *Maniples*. And yet to give ſatisfaction unto ſome, I have placed

it here amongst my Figures; yea and shewne the way, how to make it with a *private Company*. For the manner or way how to *fire upon it*, may be divers. The Muskettiers being so placed, that they may *give fire* to the *front* and *reere*, to the *right* and *left*, or to all *foure* together, at the discretion of the *Commander*. If your Muskettiers *give fire* to the *front* and *reare*, (every *ranke* making good his *leaders ground*) then the Figure will still continue the *same*. If they *give fire* without *advancing* into their *leaders ground*, then the Muskettiers will *ranke even* againe with their Pikes: and the Figure will become an *hollow crosse*, the Muskettiers making the *Angles*. The words of Command and direction, which produce the Figure, are as followeth.

Halfe files of Muskettiers, face to the Reere.

That being done,

Command all the Muskettiers to march to the Angles of their Pikes.

Next cause

The two first and two last rankes of Pikes to stand. The rest to face to the right and left; and march, untill they are cleere of the other pikes, then stand.

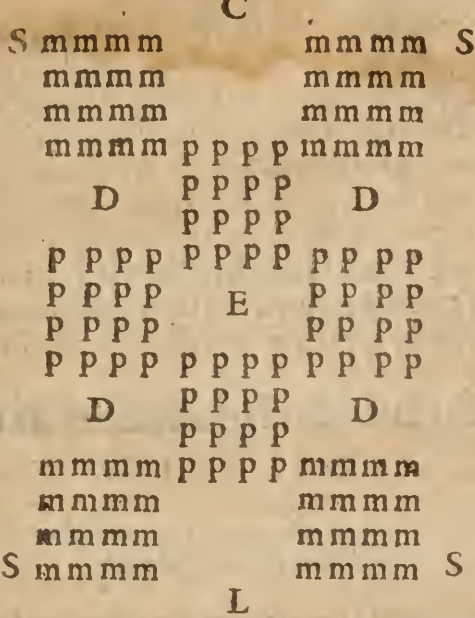
Lastly Command

The two first and last rankes of Pikes, which did not move, to double their Files to the right.

These words of Command and direction being *executed*, perfect the Figure, as followeth.

The

The Sconce Battaile.


C
S mmmm mmmm S
mmmm mmmm
mmmm mmmm
mmmm p p p p mmmm
D P P P P D
P P P P
p p p p P P P P p p p p
p p p p E p p p p
p p p p p p p p
p p p p p p p p p p p p
D P P P P D
P P P P
mmmm p p p p mmmm
mmmm mmmm
mmmm mmmm
S mmmm mmmm S
L

Many and ſeverall are the *firings*, which (with ſome little *alteration*) may be drawne from this Figure. Nevertheleſſe not to ſpin out time with diſcourſe, the *firing* now intended to be ſhewne, is to be performed to the *front* and *reere*. To which purpoſe, the one *halfe* (both of Muskettiers and Pikes) are to *face about* to the *right*; there *preſenting* and *giving fire*: thoſe of the *right flanke*, *wheeling off* to the *right*; the *left flank* to the *left*; and *placing* themſelves in the *reere* of their owne *diviſions*. The *next ranke* ſtill *moving* forwards into their *leaders ground*; the other *rankes* (ſucceſſively) doing the

like. After this manner, the firing may be continued, and the Figure still preserved.

For *reducement*. First, *face* them all after their *proper file-leaders*. Secondly, cause the *front* and *reere divisions* of Pikes, to *double* their *rankes* to the *left*. Thirdly, command the Pikes of the flankes, to *face*, in *opposition*; *close* their *divisions*, and then to *face* after their *leaders*. Next, cõmand the Musketiers of the *front division*, to *face* to the *reere*. Lastly, command the Musketiers (both of *front* and *reere*) to *close* their *divisions*. And then being *faced* to their *leader*, they are perfectly *reduced*, as at first.

Chap. XCIIII.

Of firing by three files at once; two of them standing oblique, the other direct.

When I began the *formes* and *figures* of *Battell*, I noted all *firings* to be either *oblique* or *direct*; and now for satisfaction to the curious, I shall insert two or three *oblique formes* amongst the rest. The first whereof, shall be a *Firing to the Front by drawing forth the outermost file on each flank, obliquely* (or the *innermost*, as shall seeme best to the *Commander*) untill the *bringers up* of the *files*, *stand even* with the *right* and *left angle-men*, over the *front* of *pikes*. They may also *leade* a *file* of *Musketiers*, *crosse* the *front* of *pikes*; when having *placed* and *faced* them (as they ought) for *execution*, they will

will *ſtand* in manner of this following *figure*.

Front.

C

S m m m . D p p p p p p p p D . m m m S
m m m . p p p p p p p p . m m m
m m m . p p p p p p p p . m m m
m m m . p p p p E p p p p . m m m
m m m . p p p p p p p p . m m m
m m m . p p p p p p p p . m m m
m m m . p p p p p p p p . m m m
m m m . D p p p p p p p p D . m m m

L

The *two files* of *Muskettiers* which were *led forth*, having *obliquely preſented inwards*, and the *file drawn croſſe* the *front* of *pikes*, being *preſented* direct *Rank-wiſe*: upon the firſt *Command*, they are all to *give fire* together, and then to *face* after their *bringers up*; who *leade* their *files* directly into their places. This done, they *face* to their *proper front* againe; the other files (in the meane time) *leading* forth after the ſame manner. Theſe having done their *execution*, are to *returne* into their *places*: being *led off* by their *bringers up* (as is aforeſaid). The reſt of the

files, after the same manner, *firing* and *returning*: untill they have all *given fire*; and then they will be all *reduced*, as at first.

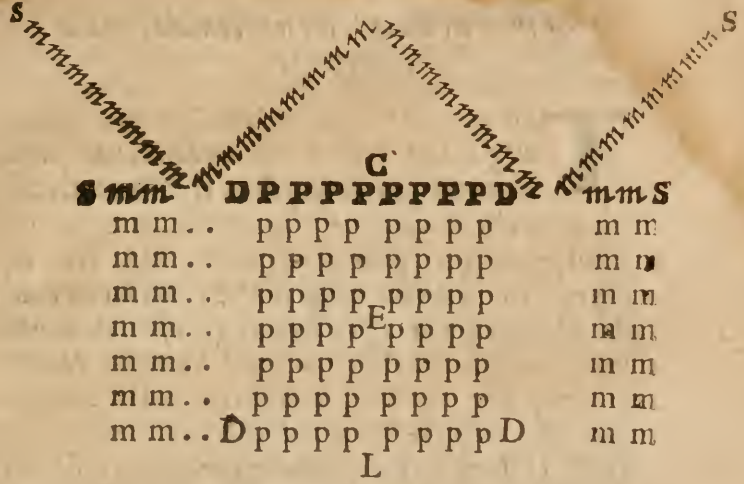
Chap. XCV.

A firing oblique, by foure files together, in forme of a W.

ALL the commendations, that may be given of these *oblique Figures*, is that they *powre out a great deale of shot at once; and may quickly be reduced to their places*. Notwithstanding, they are a great *weakening* to the *bodie*, if any sudden *accident* should happen before they are setled in their former *stations*. Nevertheless I shall leave them to themselues; and if they be found to hold out weight, I shall not grudge that I have given them roome amongst the rest. But if they prove too light, let them be as lightly respected, yet beare somewhat with them, for their *antiquitie*. The way to make the *figure*, is as followeth. The *two innermost files* of *Muskettiers* on each *flanke*, *march* forth (each of them being *led* by an *Officer*) untill they have taken their *places*. Then the *Officers* that *led* forth the *two middlemost files*, are to returne to their *places* againe; the *Serjeants* that led forth the *outermost files*, standing to see them do their *execution*. Yet before the *Muskettiers* have order

order to *give fire*, obſerue the *manner* of their *ſtanding*, by the following *Figure*.

The W. *oblique*


S
C
S m m m

Chap. XCVI.

Of the Fort Battell; the way to make, and to reduce it.

THe *figure* of the *Fort-battell*, is an *oblique firing*: and taketh its *denomination* rather from the *similitude*, then the strength of a Fort. Its chiefe use, is for the *entertainment* of some great *personage* or *Commander* in the *field*: who being received into the *midst* of the *divisions* of *Pikes*; the *Muskettiers* may *present* and *give fire*, altogether in one *vollie*. Or if they would have the *Muskettiers give fire*, one after another; then the *vollies* by *succession* (which some call the *Peale*) will be the best. If there be more *Muskettiers*, then will serve to make up the *figure* single; they may also *give fire* with the rest: *presenting obliquely* betweene the *distance* of their *leaders*. The way to make this *figure*, is as followeth. First, *draw forth* the *outmost files* (of *Muskettiers*) on each *flanke*, in *forme* of an *hollow wedge*, before the front of *pikes*. Then, cause the *next two outmost files*, to *face about*; and to follow their *bringers up*, in the same *forme* to the *Rcere*. Then, let the *last two files* of *Muskettiers* (on each *flanke*) be *drawne* after their *file-leaders*, in the same manner and *forme*, to the *flanks*. The Muskettiers being thus *ordered*, and all *presented obliquely outwards*, command the *two first*, and *two last ranks* of Pikes, to stand; the rest of the Pikes, to *face* to the *right*

right and *left*: and so to *march*, untill they are *cleare* off the other *pikes* which *stand*. Then, command the Pikes which *moved*, to *double* their *files* to the *right*. Lastly, command all the Pike-men to *face outward*; each *division* of *Pikes*, after their *hollow wedge* of *Muskettiers*. Or else, let them *face* all *inward* to the *Center*: and then the *Body* will stand in *forme* of the following *figure*.

The Fort-battell.

S
d d d d d d d
d d d d d d d
D C D
P P P

Having fired upon this figure, there is no manner of *wheeling off*: becauſe the *forme* is ſtill to be continued. But when you come to *reducement*, firſt *face* all the Pikes to their *proper front*, (that is, unto the place, where you finde the *proper file-leaders*. Secondly, let the Pikes which are *flankers*, *double* their rankes to the *left*: and ſo *cloſe* their *diviſions*. Then the Pikes will be *reduced*. For the Musketiers, firſt command thoſe on the flanke, to *leade up* their files in their due places, cloſe to the Pikes. Next, command the Muskettiers of the *reere*, to *ſleeve* up on each flanke by *diviſion*. Laſtly, command the Muskettiers before the *front* of Pikes, to *face* after their *bringers up*, and to *march* downe into their places. Laſtly *facing* to their *leader*, they are all reduced, as at firſt.

Chap. XCVII.

Of the croſſe Battell; the way to make it with a private Company. How to fire upon it: and to reduce it.

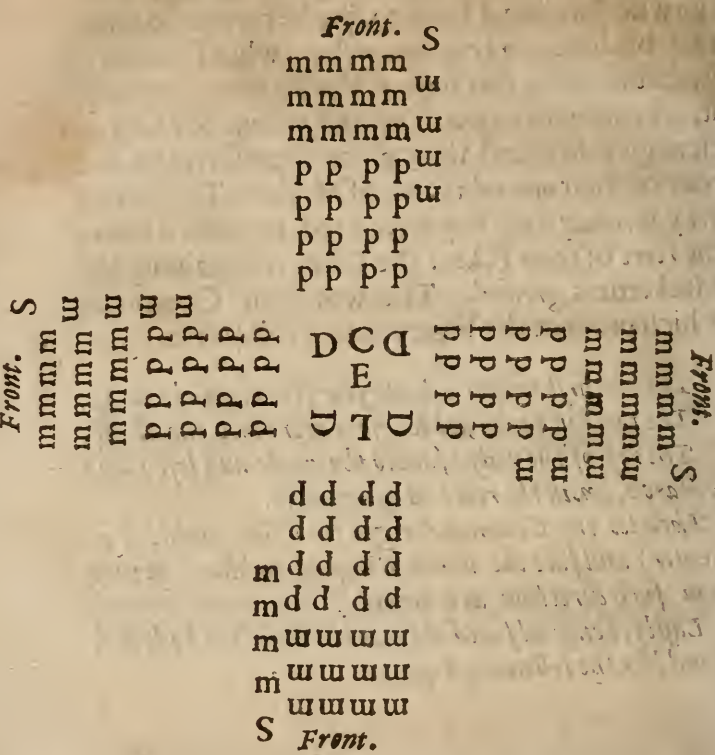
THe *Croſſe Battell*, though it muſt needs ſhew *thinne*, (in regard that the *number* is not ſufficient, to expreſſe the worth of the Figure) yet may the *forme* be very *uſefull*, with a *larger body*, and the Muskettiers may give fire, two, three, or foure waies at once upon it: Yea, if the *number* were as *opulent*, as the Figure is *excellent*, then they might

might fire twelve ſeverall wayes together. This notwithſtanding, I ſpare to ſpeake further to what may be done; and come to ſhew what I intend in it. Concerning this Figure, the waies to fire upon it, are ordinarily two. The firſt, when the Musket-tiers give fire, and then place themſelves in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions* of Muskets. The ſecond way is, after that they have fired, to place them in the *reere* of their Pikes: the Pikes maintaining the Muskettiers *ground*. The words of Command which produce the Figure, are as followeth.

The two firſt rankes, wheele your front into the midſt.
The two laſt ranks, wheele your reere into the midſt.
The reſt of the body, face to the right and left: and ſo march, untill the reere-Angles meete.
Then let the Commander goe into the midſt, (or Center) and face the whole Company to him: giving them ſuch direction, as is meete.
Laſtly, being all faced about to the right, the body will ſtand like the following Figure.

The

The Crosse Battell.



Note, that as men ſtand in ranke when they give *fire*, ſo they are to place themſelves againe, when they have *fired*. The *outermoſt* men, taking the *outſide* places: the reſt, in like manner, orderly placing themſelves *within* them.

This *croſſe Battell* being *faced* to the *front*, *reere*, and *flankes*, and the Muskettiers commanded to give fire: one way of placing them, is, in the *reere* of their *own diviſions* of Muskettiers; for that hereby, the Muskettiers will ſtill continue their places. For the ſecond way, after that the firſt rankes have given fire, let them *wheele* all off to the *right* (or to the *right* and *left*, if the *number* be *large*) and place themſelves

themſelves in the *reere* of their Pikes, each ranke *moving* forwards, and maintaining their *leaders ground.* The ſecond ranke, in like manner, is to fire, and to take their places after the Muskettiers, which fired and *wheeled off* laſt before them. The reſt, ſucceſſively, are to doe the like, untill all the *ſhot* have fired, and are *wheeled* away againe. Then let the Pikes *charge*, &c. If any object, that it is *dangerous to have ſo large diſtance betweene the fronts of each firing:* then, if you have files enow, you u may draw two or three files of each Arme; *croſſe* the *diviſions* from the *Angle* of one *front* to the other: and ſo *facing* of them *outward*, they will make reaſonable good *defence* on thoſe parts, &c.

Having *given fire* upon the *croſſe battell*, and brought your Muskets to the *reere* of the Pikes: if you would *reduce* them, *paſſe* into the *midſt* or *Center* of the Figure, and *face* all (both Muskettiers and Pikemen) to you; and cauſe thoſe which were the *flankers*, to *cloſe* their *diviſions.* Next, *wheele* the *fronts* into the *midſt* of the two other *diviſions:* then move to the *front proper*, and *face* the whole *body* to you, and ſo you ſhall have all your Muskettiers in the *midſt*; flanked with Pikes. If you would *reduce* them into their right places, command the Muskettiers to *face* to the *right* and *left outward*, the Pikes to *face* to the *right* and *left* inward: and ſo to *paſſe through*, and *interchange ground:* thus being rightly *faced*, they are *reduced.*

CHAP.

Chap. XCVIII.

Of the hollow-fronted Crosse Battell, how to make it with a private Company: and the way to fire upon it, &c.

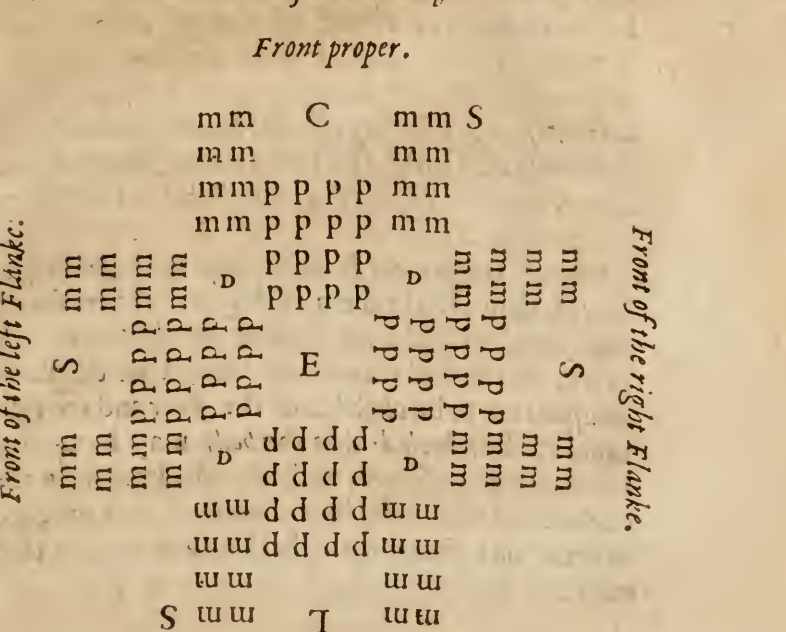
THis next Figure, shall be of the *hollow-fronted Crosse*; which is a *stronger forme*, than that last shewne, and yet thus much let me warne you of, that there can be but little expectation of *strength* to be perceived, in *Battels* formed with so small a number. This notwithstanding, the ingenious *Martialists* can easily discerne those things, which in *warre* may prove most *usefull* for his owne, and his Countries *benefit*; although they are here expressed to the publique view, in so *meane array*, and in such *thinne numbers*. Wherefore, setting aside all Apologies and excuses, I will briefly shew the words of *Command* and direction, which will produce the following Figure.

The two first rankes, wheele your front into the midst.
The two last ranks, wheele your reere into the midst.
The rest, face to the right and left: and march untill they have made the perfect Crosse.
Lastly, cause the Musketiers to flanke their Pikes: according to this following Figure.

The

The hollow fronted Croſſe.

Front proper.



Front of the Reere.

The ſeverall directions for *firing* upon this Figure, may be divers. But to avoyd *diſtraction*, I will ſhew onely one way; and that directed to the *front*, *reere*, and *flankes*. Nevertheleſſe (for varieties ſake) you may cauſe them to *give fire*, once over, *wheeling off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *reere* of their owne *diviſions*; ſtill *moving* forwards into their *leaders ground* thereby to preſerve the Figure in the ſame order.

At the ſecond time of *firing*, cauſe the Pikes

to move softly *up*, *even* with the *front* of Musket-tiers: porting as they *advance* forwards. The Musket-tiers having *fired*, and *wheeled off*, are to place themselves in the *reere* of their *divisions* of Pikes, (whom before they *flanked*) every *ranke* of Musket-tiers *firing*, *wheeling off*, and *placing* themselves, as aforesaid. Lastly, the Pikes having *charged*, and againe *readvanced*, the *body* will stand in the Figure of a perfect *Crosse*.

For the *reducement*, it is the same with the *Crosse-Battell*, delivered in the 97 Chapter. Wherefore I shall need to adde no further directions in this place, for the said *reducement*, then, that the *flanke divisions* are to be *closed*, and the *front* and *reere divisions* to be *wheeled*: that the *body* may be againe returned into a *square*, with the Musket-tiers in the *midale*. All this being here taught, I now proceed to shew one *firing* with the Musket-tiers, in that *order*.

Chap. XCIX.

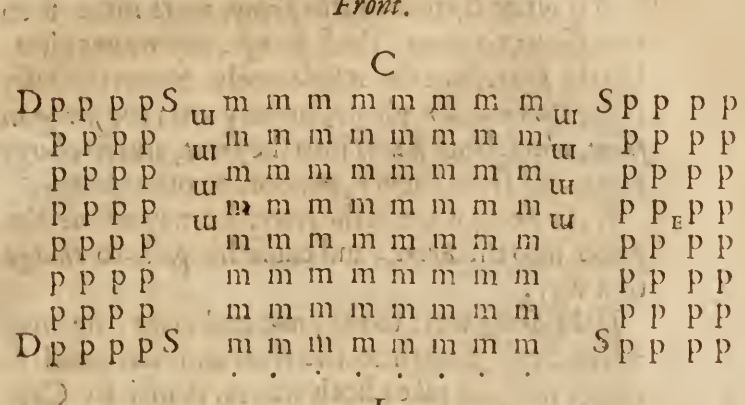
Of firing upon the square Battell, flanked with Pikes.

The *square battell flanked with Pikes*, must needs bee very safe for the Musket-tiers: as being a very able *defence* for the *flankes*, against the *incursions* of the *enemies horse*. The Figure followeth, just as the Musket-tiers are in *motion*.

The

The Square Battell flanked with Pikes.

Front.



The wayes or manners of *giving fire* upon this *figure*, are ordinarily *three*. The *first firing* is, with the *Aspect* being directed to the *front*; the *Musketiers wheeling*, either all *off* to the *right*; or to the *right* and *left*, as you perceive by this *figure*. The *second* is, for the *Muskettiers* to *give fire* to the *reere*, upon a *march*; which they may easily do, from this *figure*. The *third* is, to *give fire* to the *front* and *reere*, upon a *stand*; the *halfe-files* being *faced about*.

If the *firing* be performed to the *front*, then every *ranke* is to *march* up into their *leaders ground*.

If the *firing* be to the *Reere*, upon a *march*, then the *ranks* (contrariwise) *close backwards* towards the *Reere*: to make good the *Battell*, on that part.

If it be to the *front* and *reere*, upon a *stand*; then the *Muskettiers march up* into their *leaders ground*; and those which have *fired*, and are *wheeled* off,

place themselues in the *Reere* of their owne *divisions*.

To write further of this *firing*, were more then necessarie, no one of these *firings*, any wayes altering the *figure*, but the *Aspect* onely. Nevertheless, if the *Commander* please, he may after the *firing* in *front*, *wheele* both *flanks* into the *front*, and so *charge pikes*; and from thence, proceed to other *firings*.

If the *firing* were in the *reere*, he may *wheele* the *flanks* into the *Reere*; and cause his *pikes* to *charge* that way.

If the *firing* were to the *front* and *reere*, he may *wheele* both *flanks* into the *front* and *reere*; and so *charge* with his pikes, both wayes. Which by Captaine *Bingham* is called *Amphistomus*.

Before I come to *reducement*, I shall proceed to the next *firing* in the ensuing *Chapter*.

Chap. C.

Of the Plinthium, or foure-fronted-battell; by us called the Crosse of Muskets, flanked with Pikes.

THe *Foure-fronted Battell*, is a *figure* both steady and *serviceable*: being usefull as well for a *march* (thereby securing the *carriage*, and all other such like necessaries) as for *fight*.

For if it should so happen (as it often doth) that you should be *charged* in *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*, all at one and the same time: then are there both *Muskets* and *Pikes*, so placed, that each

each *Armes* is assisting to the other. For seeing that neither Musketiers nor Pikemen alone, can be singly sufficient of themselues, to withstand the able and resolute *horseman* (without great advantage of ground) on the contrary, the Musketiers and Pikes being conjoyned into one *body*; and being well *ordered*, they are not onely able to defend themselues against their furie; but also to put them to the worser. Yet this must not be understood, of *raw* and *unskilfull Souldiers*, whose ignorance is cause of diffidence; but of *hardy*, *experienced*, and well *exercised* men, such as know well how to demeane themselues couragiously, in time of fight.

The *words* of *Command* and direction, which produce the *figure*, are as followeth.

Halfe-files of Pikes, face to the Reere, and march untill they are cleare of the last ranke of Musketiers.

Secondly, command,

Halfe-files of Musketiers, face to the right and left, (then) march betweene the diuisions of Pikes.

Thirdly, command,

Left halfe-ranks of the first diuision of Muskets, face to the Reere, and march betweene the Reere diuisions of Pikes.

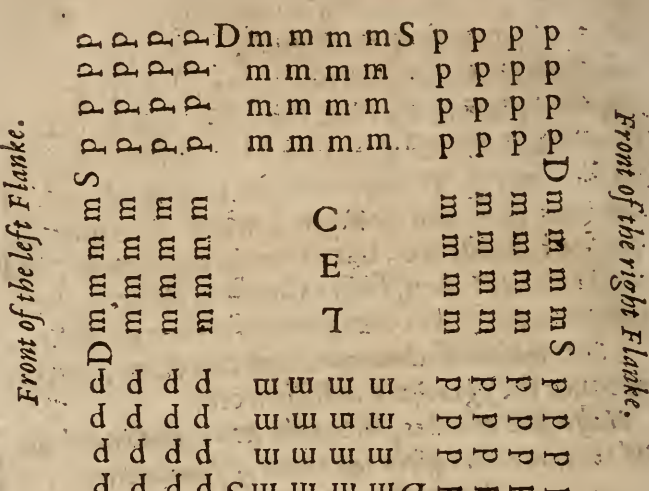
Lastly,

Having *evened* their *ranks*, *straitened* their *files*, and *closed* their *diuisions* to an *equall distance*, and being rightly *faced*; the *body* will stand like the following *figure*.

Note that all the Musketiers must be in the midst, and the Pikes on flankes, when you begin to make this figure. If your Musketiers be on the flanke when you make it, then the crosse will be Pikes, and the Angles Musketiers, &c.

The Plinthium, or foure-fronted Battell.

Front proper.



The *Plinthium* is a hollow Square Battell; fronted foure waies; the *number equall*, in *length & depth*. Another kind of *Plinthium*, is to have the *depth* exceed the *length*; the *light Armes* to be placed in the *midst* of the *hollow* part. See the *Tactick* of *Ælian*, the second *Booke*, the *notes* of the forty two *Chapter*.

The manner of the *firing*, may easily be apprehended by the *figure*; the *Muskettiers giving fire* in *ranke*, and *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*: do then passe downe their *Intervals*, under the *favour* of their *pikes*; and placing themselues in the *reere* of their *owne divisions* of *Muskettiers*; the *pikes charging* at discretion. Having *fired*, *once*, *twice*, or *oftener* over, and still maintaining the same *ground*, the *figure* will continue to be the same.

If the *reere* part of the *battell*, were by any means secured; so that you need *give fire* but *three* wayes, then the *front-halfe-files* of *Muskettiers*, might have beene preserved *intire*.

This

This *Plinthium*, or *foure-fronted Battell*, may as well be made with the *Muskettiers* in the *Angles*: the *pikes* making the *croſſe*; this kinde of *Command*, alwayes making the *croſſe* of the *Armes*, in the *midſt* of the *Battell*.

After that you have *given fire* at diſcretion, upon this *figure*, and *charged* your *pikes*, if you would *reduce* them to the firſt *ſquare*, *command* the whole *body* to *face* to the *front proper*.

Secondly, *command* the *Muskettiers* in the *reere*, to *march up* on the *left* of the *Muskettiers* in *front*: the *pikes* being firſt *opened*, to give them place.

Thirdly, cauſe the *Muskettiers* in *flanke*, to *face inward*: and to *cloſe* their *diviſions*.

Laſtly, cauſe the *pikes* to *march up*; placing themſelues *right after* their *leaders*.

This being done, the *body* will be brought againe into a *ſollid ſquare*, *flanked* with *pikes*. I forbeare further to *reduce* them, untill I ſhew the *next figure*. Yet, for further ſatisfaction to any that ſhall require it: *command* your *Muskettiers* to *face* to the *right* and *left outward*; the *pikes*, to *face inward*, and ſo to *interchange ground*; and then being rightly *faced*, they are *reduced*.

Chap. CI.

Of the Hollow Square for March.

SVndry *formes* there be which go under the *denomination* of the *hollow Square*; and very diversly they may be framed. Some are *hollow*, *impalled* with *pikes*; the *pikes*, againe, girdled with *shot*: Other *Squares*, are made with *shot*, and they *impalled* with *pikes*. Some, againe, with *divisions* of *Muskettiers* and *pikes*: orderly mixt with an *hollow* in the *midst*. A fourth sort is, when each *Armes* are *divided* by themselues: as when the *pikes* make the *front* and *reere*, and the *Muskettiers* the *wings*. A fifth way is, when the *Muskettiers leade* in *front* and *reere*, and the *pikes* make both the *flanks*. All these wayes are very necessary and usefull; as the *time*, *occasion*, or *place* shall give cause; or the judgement of the *Commander* shall see fitting. Nevertheless, the *hollow battell* which I now intend to demonstrate unto you, is especially *usefull* for a *march*: whereby to *secure* the *carriage*, as likewise to preserve the sicke and *wounded*; it may also serue, for the *Commander* to *consult* with his *Officers* or to make any *speech* or *Oration*, to the *Souldiers*. Or the *Ensigne* may in signe of *triumph*, *display* his *Colours* in the *midst*: upon a *march* after *Skirmish*.

The way to make this *figure* (the *Muskettiers* being in the *midst*) is as followeth. First *command* the

Halfe-

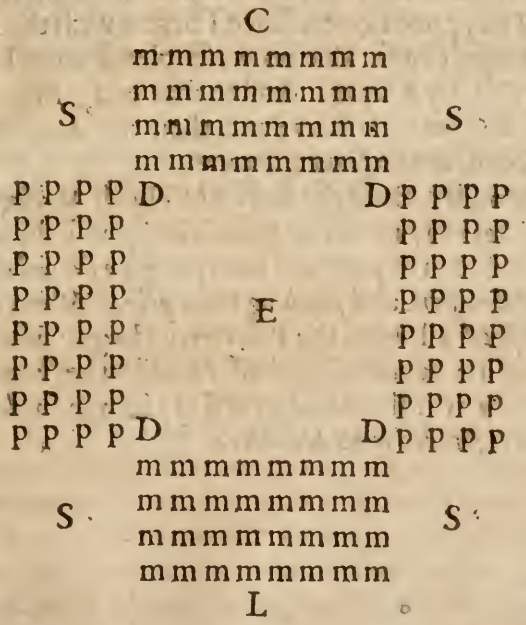
Halfe-files of Musketiers, to face to the reere:

Then command all the

Musketiers to march, and the Pikes to stand.

When they are *cleare* of the *front* and *reere* of the Pikes, let them *stand*, and *face* all to the *front proper:* and it produceth this following *figure.*

The hollow Square for March.



If you would *give fire* upon this *figure*, to the *front* and *reere*, it may be done *marching*. But, more properly, *standing*; by *facing* the *halfe-files* (both Musketiers and Pikes) to the *reere*. Then the *com-*

mand

mand being given, to *present*, and *give fire*; they *wheele off* by *division*: placing themselues in the *reere* of their *owne divisions* of *Muskettiers*; each *ranke moving forwards* into their *leaders ground*, and doing the like. If you should *give fire*, and not *move forwards* into your *leaders ground*; then the *Muskettiers* would *fill* the *hollow* in the *middest*; betweene the *Pikes*. Nevertheless, suppose the figure still to continue to be the same. Because I will now come to the *reducement*: and the rather, for that I have not done it, since I began with the *Hollow-fronted Crosse*. But now (so please you) I will *reduce* all, by a *firing*. And to that end, first *close* your *divisions* of *Pikes*; and then the *Muskettiers* will be all in the *front* and *reere*.

Secondly, cause the *halfe-files* (both *Muskettiers* and *pikes*) to *face* to the *Reere*. Then, cause the *Muskettiers* (both of *front* and *reere*) to *give fire*; *wheeling off* by *division*, and *flanking* their *pikes*. When they have *fired* all *over*, the *Pikes* may *charge*: who being againe *advanced*, and all *faced* to the *front proper*, they are all *reduced* (as at first) into the *ordinary Square*, *flanked with Muskets*.

CHAP.

Chap. CII.

Of the hollow Hearſe, and the Croſſe.

The *Hearſe-Battell*, by the Greekes called *Orthophalanx*, (as in *Ælian*) is, *when the depth doth manifold exceede the length, thrice at the leaſt*. It may be made, either *ſollid* or *hollow*, at the diſcretion of the Commander. And notwithſtanding that this Figure (ſimply of it ſelfe) hath ever beene accounted *weake* (as bringing but few hands to fight) nevertheleſſe being conjoyned with the *Croſſe*, it may prove *ſerviceable*. True it is, that being expreſt by ſo *ſmall a number*, the *ſtrength* of it cannot ſo evidently be diſcerned: which, were the *number* more, each *diviſion* would appeare to be the *ſtronger*, both for *offence* and *defence*. But I have onely taken upon me, to ſhew the *ſeverall formes* and *figures* of *battell*, which may be *formed*, and *practiſed* by a *private Company*: as having *limited* my ſelfe, not to *exceed* the number of 128 men. Wherefore my requeſt muſt be, that the *Courteous Reader*, when he ſhall finde that any Figure for want of *number*, ſhall looke *thinne*, (or poore) he will there be pleaſed to *clothe* it in a larger *number*: for that thereby the *Battell* will appeare the more *ſollid*, and the *beholder* become the better *ſatisfied*.

This

This Figure may be *usefull* upon a *march*, for a *Convoy*: the *hollow parts* thereof, being very *commodious*, to *secure* the *carriage*: the *men* also are very well *disposed* to *helpe* and *assist* each other, in whatsoever part it should happen them to be assailed.

The words of Command and direction which produce the Figure, are as follow.

Wheele front and reere into the left flanke.

That done, *face* them as before, and the Musketiers will be in *front*, *midst*, and *reere*.

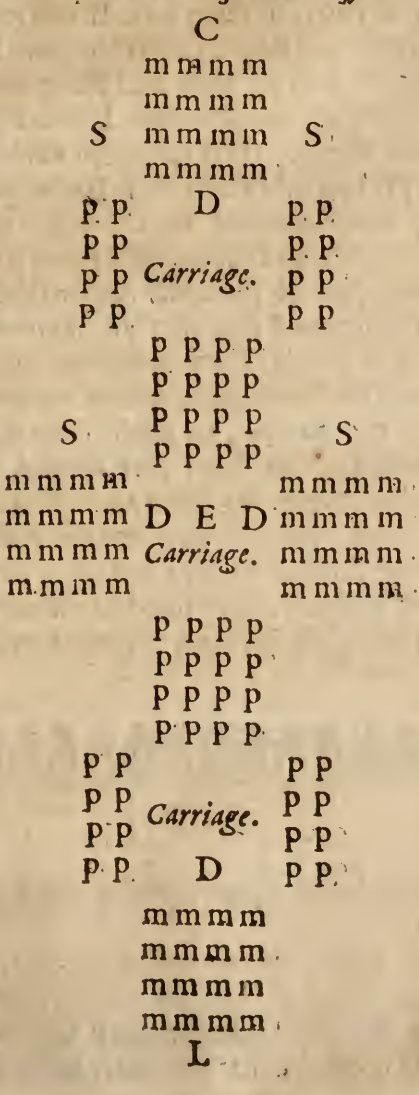
Next, *open* the Musketiers in the *midst*, to the *right* and *left*, and cause them to *double* their *rankes* to the *left*.

Then cause the *front-halfe-files* of the *front division* of Pikes, to *open* to the *right* and *left*: and the *reere halfe-files* of the *reere division* of Pikes to doe the like.

Then, having *evened* their *rankes*, and *straightened* their *files*, and being *faced* to their *leader*, the *body* will stand in *forme*, like this Figure.

The

The hollow Hearse and Crosse.



If

If so be, you will *give fire* upon this Figure, you may doe it *any way*, or *every way*. If you *give fire* to the *front*, *reere*, and *flankes*; then let your Musketiers *wheele* all *off* to the *right*, and place themselves in the *reere* of their *own divisions*. If you would still preserve the Figure, then let every *ranke* (before they *give fire*) *march up* into their *leaders ground*.

Having either *marched*, or *skirmished* upon this Figure, (or both) and then would come to reducement, First, *face* all the *whole body* to the proper *front*, and cause the Pikes that are *flankers*, to *face inwards*, and to *close* their *divisions*. This being done, cause the Musketiers which are in the *middle* part of the *Battaile*, to *double* their *files* to the *right*. Secondly, let them *face inward*, and *close* their *division*. Next, let them *face* all to their *leader*, and *wheele front* and *reere* into the *right flanke*; which being done, and they *faced* again to the *front proper*; they will be *reduced* into the *ordinary square*; the Pikes being *flanked* with the Musketiers, as at first.

CHAP. CIII.

Of the Hollow Square, girdled with shot.

THe *Hollow Square Girdled with shot*, is a Figure to be used in such times of necessity, as the Commander shall see occasion: who well knowing, that hee shall be enforced to

fight,

fight, having found some commodious advantage of *ground*, *drawes forth* his *battell* into this *forme* and *array*. The *use* whereof is, that within the *hollow* parts of it, he may convey such of his *carriage*, or *whatsoever* else may not prove *usefull* for the *strengthening* of some part of the *battell*. Having drawne his men speedily into this forme, lest that the enemy should take the advantage, to breake their order by entring at any of the *Angles*, they are speedily to *cast up a Rampart of earth*, in each of those parts of the Angles. Or if they have not time, (or that the ground be not fit) they may supply that defect by placing some of their Wagons, Carts, or other of their Carriage, so orderly, that it may be sufficient to fortifie those parts, which are the weakest. This Figure, may be as well made with the Pikes foremost: but because that the Musketiers may more commodiously *fight* before their Pikes, and with *lesse danger* to their owne *body*: therefore I conceive it fittest, at first to place them in *front* of their Pikes. And if the *enemy* shall too hotly presse them with his horse; then, at the discretion of the Commander, they may safely retreate behinde their Pikes; the Pikemen *making good* the *ground* of the Muskettiers. For better satisfaction, observe the *direction* to make the following Figure. First, commanda Serjeant to *draw forth* all the **odde files* of the right flank, (both Muskettiers and Pikes), and *wheele* them to the *left*, so forward for the rest, if the *Body* be larger; beginning your account from the *outermost file*, to the *right*. Note, that the *odde files* on the *left flanke*, are *file* the third, the fifth, the seventh, &c. so still accounting the *odde files*, the *outermost file* to the *left*.

* Note, that the *odde files* on the *right flank*, are the *outermost files* to the *right*; the third *file*, the fift *file*, the seventh, & the *left hand* beginning with

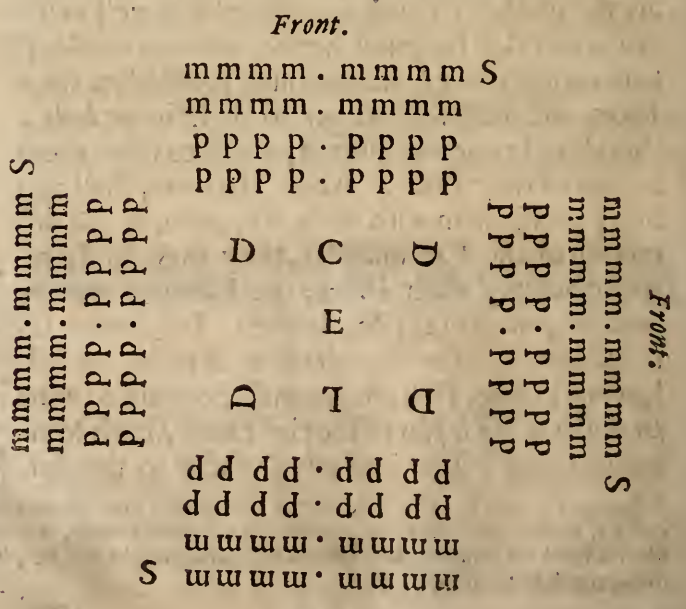
crosse

crosse the *front*. That being done, command the *odde files* of the *left flanke*, (as well Muskettiers as Pikes) to *face* to the *reere*, and let them in like manner be *wheeled* to the *left*, *crosse* the *reere*, following their *Bringers up*.

For the rest of the *body*, that remaines *undrawne forth*: let them *close* to the *right* and *left outward*; untill the *Reere-Angles* of each *division*, stand *diagonally opposite* to each other. Then, let them be all *commanded* to *face* to the *Center* or *midst* of the *hollow square*; where the Commander is to give them such *incouragement* & *directiõs*, as shalbe meet.

Lastly, let all *face* about to the *right*, and *present*.

The hollow square Girdled with Muskettiers.


Front.
m m m m . m m m m S
m m m m . m m m m
p p p p . p p p p
p p p p . p p p p
D C D
E
D I D
d d d d . d d d d
d d d d . d d d d
w w w w . w w w w
S w w w w . w w w w
Front.
m m m m S
m m m m . m m m m
p p p p . p p p p
p p p p . p p p p
Front.

For

For the manner of *firing* upon this Figure, it is as followeth. The *first ranke* of Muskettiers (to each *front*) having *presented* and *given fire*, they are to *wheele* all *off* to the *right*. And because that eight or tenne men, are too *many* to *wheele downe* one *Intervalle*, (for that they will bee so *long*, before they can *cleere* the *front*) therefore you may cause *Intervalles* to be made, betweene the midst of each *division*, as you may perceive in the Figure. The *first ranke* having *fired*, and *wheeled off*, the *next ranks* are to *move forwards* into their *ground*: they which *wheeled off*, in the meane time placing themselves in the *reere* of their *owne divisions* of Muskettiers. The *next ranke* of Muskettiers having *fired* in like manner, are to *wheele off*, and to place themselves, as aforesaid: the *rest of the rankes* of Muskettiers, (successively) are to doe the like, untill they have all *given fire*, (once or oftner over) that way, according to the occasion. And in this *interim* may the Bow-pikemen be bountifull in bestowing their *showers* of *arrowes*, amongst the thickest of their *enemies*.

If the *horse* prevaile so much, that the *Muskettiers* may not endure to beare the *brunt* of them: then let the *Muskettiers* (after they have *fired*) *wheele off*, and place themselues in the *reere* of their following *divisions* of *pikes*: they *moving forwards*, and *maintaining* the *Muskettiers ground*; *charging* with their *pikes* (as they see occasion) for *securing* the *Muskettiers*, in the *midst*. This notwithstanding, if the *enemies horse* shall still *presse forwards*; and with their *shot* shall continue to *annoy* the *body* (the *pikes*

on this *figure* being especially *defensive*) then cause the *Pikemen* to *charge* at the *foot*; and your *Musket-tiers*, to *give fire* over them: according to former *directions*, on the *Convex halfe-moone*. After this manner, the *battell* may be continued to the *last ranke*. When you have *given fire* in this order, your *Muskettiers* being all in the *reere* of your *pikes*; and that you be minded to *reduce* them, into the *first orderly square*, this is one way for it. *Passe through* your *Muskettiers*, before your *front* of *pikes*, as they were before the *firing*: that being done, let the *Commander face* the *whole body* to the *left Angle*, of the *front-division*, by which meanes he shall there finde the *halfe* of his *file-leaders*. This being performed, let them *march*: and so *even* their *ranks*, and *straiten* their *files*; the *reere division* of *Muskettiers* and *Pikes*, orderly following after the *front division* of the like *Armes*. After this, let the *halfe-files* which then are (which indeed are the *residue* of the *file-leaders*) *double* their *ranks forwards* to the *left*: which being performed, the *men* are *reduced* as at first.

If you would *reduce* them some other way, without *passing through* your *Muskettiers* (as I have formerly said) then first let the *whole body face* to the *left Angle*, of the *front-division*; and *march*, *evening* their *ranks* and *files*, as aforesaid. Which being done, cause the *halfe-files* (which then are) to *double* their *front* to the *left*, which being in like manner performed, all your *Muskettiers* are still in the *midst*. Your next worke, is, to cause your *Muskettiers* to *face* to the *right and left outward*: and your

your *pikes*, contrariwise, to *face inward*; and so to *passe through*, and *interchange ground*. Thus being *faced* to their *front proper*, they will be *reduced*, as at first.

If any will be *practising* of this *forme* of *battell*, with a *smaller number* of *men* (as with 64. or *fewer*) whereby they will be constrained to *double* their *halfe-files*: then they will be *reduced* the same way: onely they shall not need to *double* their *halfe-files* againe, in their *reducement*: as they must needs do, were the *number larger*.

Chap. CIIII.

Of the Sollid Square, with Muskettiers in Center and Angles. The way to make the figure with a private Companie: how to fire upon it, and to reduce it.

INfinite are the *formes* and *figures* of *Battell*, which may be made; yet all *differing*, either in *circumstances* or in *matter*. Some of them are *Sollid*, others *Hollow*: some of them, again, being *Trines*, *Squares*, *Hearses*, *Cirtes*, *Crosses*, *Diamonds*, *Plinthiums*, *Plesiums*, *Paramekes*, and *infinite* others. Some of them taking their *denomination* from the *nature* of their *numbers*. Others, according to the *placing* of each *Armes*. A *third* sort, taking their *names* from things they most *resemble*; all of them being necessarie to be knowne, to such

which would be accounted skilfull *Serjeant-Majors*: that with all *numbers*, upon all *occasions*, they may readily bring their *Souldiers* into any *forme* or *figure* of battell (according as the *time*, the *number*, and *place* will give them leave) for *opposition* of *horse*, *foot*, or *both* together.

But to returne backe to our *single Company*, the worke of this *Chapter*, being to shew the *Plesium*, or *long square*. In which the *Muskettiers* are *halfe* in the *midst* of the *Pikes*; and the other *halfe equally divided*, and *placed* on the 4. *Angles* of the *battell*: the *pikes* making 4. *divisions*; as being *placed* upon the *front*, *reere*, and *flanke*. Yet not to hold you with longer *circumstance*, take these *words* of *command* and direction; which produce the following *figure*.

Halfe-files, double your front to the left entire:
Onely do not close them, to make one Body.
That being done, your Body will be but 4. deepe.
Next, command the 2. outmost flanks of each Body; to double inward, by division.

For better satisfaction, observe these *directions*.

First, see the *halfe-ranks* of the *outmost flanks*, *faced* to the *front* and *reere*: and that they *march*, untill they are *cleare* of the *standing* part of the *battell*.

Secondly, cause the *halfe-ranks* of the *right flank*, and the *halfe-ranks*, of the *left-flanke*, to *face* in *opposition*, and to *close* their *divisions*: the two *first ranks* of each *flanke*, *moving crosse* the *front* of the *standing part* of the *body*; and the two *last ranks* of each *flanke moving crosse* the *reere*. Then, the whole *body facing* to the *front*, they will stand as in this *figure*.

The

The Polium.

C

E

S m m m m m D p p p p p p p p p D m m m m m S
m m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m
p p p p p m m m m m m m m m p p p p p
p p p p p m m m m m m m m m p p p p p
p p p p p m m m m m m m m m p p p p p
p p p p p m m m m m m m m m p p p p p
m m m m m p p p p p p p p p m m m m m
S m m m m m D p p p p p p p p p D m m m m m S

L

If you would *give fire* upon this *figure*, it may be performed either to the *front* and *reere*, to the *right* and *left*, or to *all foure* together. But which way soever the *firing* be, let the *Aspect* of the *Muskettiers* in the *midst*, be turned the same way, and cause the *pikes* which stand *before* them, to *charge* at the *foot*, and the Muskettiers in the *Center*, to *give fire* over them. The *first ranke* having *fired*, let them kneele (or *crouch* low) upon the ground; making *ready* againe: whilest the next ranks behinde them, *give fire*, and do the like: and so forwards, for the *rest*. Having all *fired once over*, this way, let them rise up: and (if need be) *give fire over* againe, after the same manner. The *Muskettiers* on the *Angles* (in the *interim*) *giving fire* after the ordinary way, *wheeling off*, and *falling* in the *reere* of the Muskettiers of their *own divisions*; the others in the meane time *moving forwards*, and making *good* their *lea-*

ders ground. This being done, and the *pikes* having *charged*; the *figure* will stil continue to be the same, without alteration. And that as well in *men* as *matter:* if so be the *firing* be performed, according to the former *direction.*

For *reducement*, *command* the two *first ranks*, and two *last ranks*, to *face* to the *right* and *left:* all *marching forth*, untill they are *cleere* of the *standing* part of the *bodie.*

Next, *command* them to *stand:* then, *face* them to the *right* and *left*; and *close* their *divisions.* This being done, let them *face* all to their *leader.* Lastly, by *commanding* the *halfe-files* to *face about* to the *right*; and to *march forth* into their *places:* you shall see them fully to be *reduced.*

I might have further enlarged my selfe, upon this *subject* of *firings*, and *figures* of *Battell:* yea and shewed *varieties* enow of *Trine Battels*, *round battels*, the *crosse* and *round*, in *one*; the *sollid-square impaled*, besides infinite other kindes. But I have already advanced further, then I at first intended: though (well I hope) no further then will be freely and lovingly accepted. Which if it be, I shall conceive my *selfe* to have received a *gratefull* and most *ample satisfaction.* The hope whereof, doth somewhat encourage me to *proceed* a little further. And as I have already shewed divers and severall *Motions*, with their *formes* and *figures* of *Battell:* yea and in all (or the most part of them) as I have not onely given the *words* of *command* and *direction*, to *produce* them from the *ordinary square*, but also together with the *demonstration* of the *figure*, and *direction*

for

for the *firing:* I have, in like manner, given *direction* for the *reducements* againe into the *ordinary square:* So now, for the satisfaction of some of the *quainter* sort of *Souldiers*, give me leave to *multiply one figure upon another, untill that by firings, I reduce firings.* For the performance whereof, that I may observe some *method*, I will *digest* them into the *way* of *Exercise*, &c.

Chap. CV.

The first daies Exercise.

HAving brought your *Company* into a place convenient, where you intend to *exercise* them; if you have time enough, you may cause the *file leaders, Corporals* or *Serieants*, to instruct them in the * *Postures* and *true using* of their *Armes.* Wherein having spent some time, to the benefit of the *Company*; upon the * first *summons* of the *Drum*, each *file-leader* with his *file*, is to *march* into his *place.* The *Captaine* (or other *Commander*) being at the *head* of his *Company, commands* them to * *even their rankes, and to straiten their Pikes*, and *stand in their order both in ranke and file.* * If your *Ensigne* be not already in the *field*, but in some place neere at hand; then cause your two *innermost files* of pikes to advance: commanding a *Serjeant* with a *Drum*,

* It is very necessary, still, so often as time will permit; to instruct the Souldiers, in the postures and the well handling of their *Armes.*

* Each file-leader to lead up his file upon the first Summons of the Drum.

* Ever to observe to beeven in Ranke, and strait in file, and stand at the true distance.

* Fetching the Ensigne to the head o' the Company.

to *troop* them along to the place of *Rẽdezvouz*, there to fetch their *Colours*. If the place be not nigh at hand, take as many *files* of *Muskettiers*. Having brought the *Ensigne* to the head of the Pikes, each *file* returnes into his place; the *Officers* likewise, withdrawing their severall *stations*.* Silence being commanded, the *Captain* (or other *Commander*) begins * first to instruct the *Souldiers* in the severall *distances*, betwixt *ranke* and *file*, with the waies to *open* and *close* to them. And if hee thinke fit, to instruct them in the severall *uses* of each *distance*.

Next after *distance*, they are to be instructed in the †*facings*, then in the *doublings*; next, in the *Countermarches*; and lastly, in the *wheeling*. In each of which they are to be instructed, according to the opportunity of the time and place: but, especially is the capacity of the Souldier to be observed. Wherein, the *Captaine* may doe very well, in each of the *motions* to lay downe some speciall *rules* and *observations*; by which the *Souldier* may the better understand what he is to doe, and how (the best way) to performe it.

* After the *motions* ended, let them prepare for *skirmish*. And first you may cause them to *give fire* with *forlorne files*, *marching* forth twenty *paces* (or thereabouts) before the *front*. Having all *fired over* that way, they may *give fire once over*, by *advancing* two *rankes* together, ten *paces* before the *front*. Then let them *give fire*, *even* with the *front*, and then with the *halfe-files*: the Pikes porting or charging, according to discretion. The Pikes being *advanced*, and the Muskettiers *marched up*, *even* with

* Souldiers ought to be very silent. First, the souldiers ought to have their due distance given them, with directions how most properly to performe.

† Facings, Doublings, Countermarches & Wheelings wherein the Souldier ought treatably to be instructed: the *Commander* alwayes observing, what his Souldiers are hee hath to deale withall, and to give his directions accordingly. Never striving to put more into the *battle* then it can conveniently hold.

* Observe to *march* between each firing, & upon each *figure*, that may be convenient.

with their *front*; you may either * *face about*, *wheele about*, or *Countermarch*, and so *give fire* in the *reere*. Your Pikes then being *shouldered*, and your Muskettiers having *fired over* in the *reere*, you may (if you please) * *wheele* your *flankes* in to the *front*, and so *charge* Pikes to the *reere*. Which done, *wheele* your *front* into the *midst*; passe into your *place*, and *face* them to you. Then (if you will) you may passe your Muskettiers of the *left flanke*, through betweene the *rankes* of Pikes, and place them next to the *right flanke* of Pikes, opening the *right flanke* of Muskettiers, to give them way. Then let the * Pikes *shoulder*, and Muskettiers *give fire* to the *right*, upon a *march*: their *leaders* leading them up betweene the Pikes and their owne *divisions* of Muskettiers. Having *fired once over*, in this way, let them continue their *firing* to the *right*, each *leader* leading up his *file* on the *outside* of the *left flanke* of Pikes. Then * let the Pikes *advance*, even whilest the last *file* is *giving* of *fire*: and so soon as the Pikes are cleere of the Muskettiers, let them *face* all to the *right*, and *charge*. Having *advanced* your Pikes, and *faced* your *body* againe to the *left*, you may then *wheele* your *Battell about* to the *right*, and then *facing* the *whole body* to the *left*, the Muskettiers will be all in *front*. Then let your Muskettiers *give fire*, and either *wheele* all *off* to the *right*, thereby making * an *Intervalle* for the *left flanke*, or else let them *wheele off* by *division*, placing themselves in the *reere* of their owne *divisions* of Muskettiers. Having *given fire once* (or oftner) *over* that way, let them *give fire* againe, and *wheele off* by *division*: *ranking*

* *Face about*, or *wheele about*, for to *Countermarch* if any *on my* be neer, is very dangerous.

* Wheele your *Flanks* into the *Front* if your Souldiers have time enough, otherwise face to the *Reere*, and charge *Pikes*.

* When the *Pikes* shoulder the *Musketiers* must observe to *ranke* even with them.

* Upon this firing, *advance Pikes* when there is but one *file*: and close forwards to the distance of order.

* These kind of *Intervals* ought to contain six foot in distance upon some other occasions, 12 foot is necessary.

ranking even with their Pikes. That being done, cause the Pikes to *charge:* the Musketiers *giving fire once over*, on that Figure. The Pikes being *advanced*, *face* the whole *body* to the *right*: and cause the Musketiers to *stand*, and the Pikes to *open* to the *right* and *left*, and so to make the *hollow square*. Then you may (if you please) *command* the *Ensigne* to *display his Colours* in the *midst* of the *hollow*; in signe of *triumph*: the *body*, either *standing* or *marching*. After which, command the Pikes to *close their divisions:* Which being performed, command the *reere division* of Muskettiers, to double their *front* of Pikes, by *division:* and then they will stand in forme of Captaine *Wallers Triple firing*: Let them *give fire* upon that Figure, and *fall off* againe, according to the *directions* upon that Figure. Which being performed, and the Pikes *charged*, and *readvanced*: the *body* will be absolutely *reduced*, as at the first it was before you began your *firings*. These *firings*, may (with the *motions*) be sufficient for the *first daies Exercise*. Wherefore, for this time, we will *lodge our Colours*: untill by the *summons* of the *Drum*, we are *called* forth to the second *daies practise*.

The hollow Square.

Captain *Wallers* firing.

Chap.

Chap. CVI.

The second dayes Exercise.

HAving brought your *Souldiers* the second time, into the *field*, the body being *drawne up* into the *ordinary square*, and every *Officer* vigilant in his *place:* the Captaine commandeth *silence*, with some other generall termes of *observation*, both for the *leaders* and *right hand men*. Having thus commanded them (as before) to *even their rankes*, and to *straiten* their *files:* he proceeds to shew (as formerly) the *distances*, the *facings*, the *doublings*, the *Countermarches*, and the *wheelings:* therewithall instructing them either in *all*, or so *many* of them, as the time will permit, and he thinkes convenient. Ever (by the way) observing that in the Proverbe, *A thing once well done, is twice done*. That Commander, that *exerciseth* his *Souldiers* with good *language*, and with *sollid reasons*; shall make them better *proficients* then he that shall use *rigid termes*, and *rough hands*. After the *postures*, *distances*, and severall *motions*; that which next followes for this *daies exercise*, are *firings* and *figures* of *battell*. So soone, therefore, as the *Drum* begins to *beat a preparative*, the Muskettiers are to begin to *make ready*.

Silence.

Vpon all motions be sure that the Souldiers stand even in ranke and file.

Good words more available then blowes, or ill language.

The Musketties make ready to give fire.

And

And first, you may cause them to *give fire* on the *Horne Battell*, still *marching up* into their *leaders ground:* by that meanes preserving their Figure.

Secondly, let the Muskettiers *close* their *diuisions* before their Pikes, and then *give fire* upon the *demie-Hearse-Battell: falling off* presently, either all to the *right*, (the one halfe *passing* downe an *Intervalle*) or to the *right* and *left* by *division*; and *placing themselves* in the *reere* of their *owne diuisions* of Muskettiers.

Between each firing cause your body to march either in forme of *Battalia*, extended in length: or upon any other *figure*, where it may conveniently be done without disorder.

The third time of their *firing*, let them *wheele off* by *division*, and flanke their Pikes: and when they have *fired over* that way, let the Pikes *charge*.

For the fourth *firing*, let them *give fire even* with the *front* of Pikes, *wheeling off* to the *right* and *left*, and placing themselves in the *reere* of their owne *diuisions*.

Then let them fire even with the halfe-files, *wheeling off* by division, and placing themselves in the *reere* of the Pikes. The Pikes (you are to understand) ought to *charge* all the time of the last firing: who being *advanced*, you are to *wheele* your *Battell about* to the *right* or *left*.

Then, your Muskettiers being in the *reere* of your Pikes, let your sixt firing be to the *reere:* the Muskettiers *wheeling off* by *division*, and *placing* themselves before the *front* of their *owne diuisions* of Muskettiers; and next *behinde* the *reere* of Pikes. Having fired once over, that way, let them give fire ouer againe, and flanke their Pikes: which being in like manner performed, Command them to *wheele* their flankes into the *front*, and then *face* to the

the *reere*, and *charge pikes*, at the *inside* of the *right foot*, with their *swords drawne* in their *right hands*.

Let the seventh *firing* be discharged *over their pikemen*, *wheeling*, either all *off*, to the *right* through *Intervals*, or else by *division*, and *placing* themselues in the *reere* of their *owne files*. Otherwise, (for want of room) the *first ranke* of *Musketiers*, having *given fire*, let them *kneel*, or *crouch* low upon the ground: and make ready againe; the second *ranke*, in like manner, *firing* and kneeling: and so for the rest. Having all *fired once over*, in that manner, let the Pikes *advance*, and put up their *swords*: the *Musketiers*, in like manner, are to *rise*, then to *even*, their *ranks*, and *streighten* their *files*.

For the eighth *firing*, you may *face* the *body* to the *reere* (or if you will continue your *firing* the same way) then *wheele* your *battell about*, and having *opened* your *Intervals*, your *forme* will be the *broad fronted Phalange*, or *broad fronted Battell*. Let these *give fire*, the *first* time, *falling* (or *wheeling*) all *off* to the *right*: and *placing* themselues in the *reere* of their *owne divisions* of Muskettiers. The *second* time of *firing*, let them *wheele* all *off* to the *right*, (as before) and *place* themselues in the *reere* of the *pikes*, which *follow next after* their *owne divisions*. In the *interim* of the *last two ranks firing*, cause your *Pikes* to *port*: but when the *Musketiers* are *cleered* away, the *Pikes* may *charge*.

When the *pikes* are *advanced*, for the ninth *firing*, *face* them to one of the flanks, and *wheele* them into a *Semicircle* or *Convex half-moone*; where the Muskettiers being *outermost*, *give fire* upon that

figure:

figure: the *first* time, *falling* behinde the *Muskettiers* of their *owne divisions:* The second time of *firing*, cause them to *place* themselues *behinde* their *pikes*. For further *directions*, looke backe upon the 77. *Chapter*, which discourseth of the *Convex halfe-moone*. The *pikes* may also *charge*, and the *Muskettiers give fire over* againe: according to *discretion*. The Pikes being *readvanced*, *face* the whole *body* to one of the flanks, and *march* them *out* horsewise. Then *command* them to *double* their ranks to the *right:* which being done, *command* that flank which are Muskettiers, to *double* the *contrary flanke* by *division:* which being performed, all the Muskettiers will be in *front* and *reere*. Then cause the *reere-division* of Muskettiers to *double* the *front* of Pikes, by *division*.

Then let them *give fire* on that *figure*, as they may see further directions in the *Chapter*. The *pikes* having *charged*, and *advanced* againe.

For the eleventh *firing*, first *face* the whole *body* to the *right*: then cause the *halfe-files* that then are, to *face* to the *reere*; and so let the *Muskettiers give fire* to the *front* and *reere*: *wheeling off* by *division*, and flanking their pikes. The pikes may also *charge* to the *front* and *reere*, which being performed, *face* them all againe, to their *leader*.

For the twelfth *firing*, make the *Plinthium* or *foure-fronted battell:* the *Angles* whereof being filled with Muskettiers. For further *satisfaction*, looke upon *Chapter* 100. which gives *direction*, both for the *motion* and *reducing* thereof. Next *face* the whole *body* to that part which was the *front*, before

the

the *laſt firing* began. Then, if you would have your *Enſigne* to *diſplay*, in an *hollow Square*, cauſe your *Muskettiers* to *ſtand*, and *halfe-files* of *pikes*, to *face* to the *Reere*: and ſo both *diviſions* of *pikes* to *march*, untill their *laſt ranks* are *even* with the *front* and *Reere* of *Muskettiers*. Then *face* all to their *leader*. If you pleaſe, the Muskettiers may *give fire* upon this *hollow ſquare*, as they *march*, to *both flanks*: ſtill *leading* up their *files*, on the *inſide* of their *owne diviſions*, and this will make the 13. *firing*.

But by this time, our *powder* being *ſpent*, our *men* weary, and *night* approaching: We will come to *reducement*. Wherefore, firſt cauſe the *Pikes* to *cloſe* their *diviſions*, and the *Muskettiers* to *march up*, *even* with their *front* of *pikes*. Then let the whole *body*, *wheele* their *flanks* into the *reere*, which being done, all the *Muskettiers* will be in the *Reere*. Then (if you will) *face* to the *Reere*, and *give fire*; cauſing your *Muskettiers* to *wheele* off by *diviſion*, and to flanke their *pikes*. Or elſe, cauſe your *Muskettiers* to *open* to the *right* and *left*; and *double* your *front* of *pikes*, by *diviſion*. Which being done, *double files* to the *left*; and they will be all *reduced* as at firſt. Wherefore, we will now *lodge our Colours*, and conclude our *ſecond dayes Exerciſe*, &c.

CHAP.

Chap. CVII.

The Third dayes Exercise.

Who∫oever it be that teacheth the po∫tures of the Musket: ought to be very diligent, in his inſtruction, concerning the well managing of their armes: that they may not only fire to the Front reere and flank: But that they obſerve order in their motion, which will better their execution. The *file-leader* if he have time may inſtruct his *file* in the diſtances and the ſeverall motions.

HAving the third time (as formerly) brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*; it is very neceſſarie, in the firſt place, that they be taught the *Poſtures* of each *Armes:* either by the *file-leaders*, or ſome other of the *Officers*. Wherein they muſt be carefull, to inſtruct them in the *firings*, both to *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*. As to *give fire* to the *front*, *advancing*; to *give fire* to the *front*, upon a *ſtand:* to *give fire* to the *Reere*, upon a *march:* to *fire* to *either flanke*, *marching* or *ſtanding*. As alſo to inſtruct them in *diſtance*, *facings*, *doublings*, *countermarches*, and *wheelings:* that ſo they may be the more *apt* and *capable*, when they ſhall be brought into a *body*. Having ſpent ſome time, in the *exerciſing* of *files*, let the *Drumme ſummon* each *file-leader*, to his place: the *Enſigne* be fetcht to the *head* of the *Company*; the *Captaine* command *ſilence*; and the *Souldiers* tender *obedience*. The *ranks* being *evened*, and the *files ſtreitened*, the *Captaine* (according to his accuſtomed manner) begins to inſtruct them in the *Diſtances* and *Motions*. And after the performance of ſo many of them, as he ſhall thinke fit for the preſent *exerciſe*, he *commands* the *Drummes* to *beat*, and *Muskettiers* to *make ready:* and ſo cauſeth them to *give fire*, three

* three or foure ſeverall wayes, after the ordinarie manner of *firing* in the *front*.

* By drawing forth off looſe files or otherwiſe.

Then cauſe your Muskettiers of the *left flanke*, to *give fire* to the *reere*; and the Muskettiers of the *right flanke*, to *give fire* to the *right*. This *firing* is to be performed upon a *march*, the Pikes ſhouldered.

For the *ſecond firing*, let them give fire to both *flankes*. The *gathering firing*.

For the *third*, let them fire to *both flankes, drawing* them *up* betweene the *diviſions* of Muskettiers and Pikes.

For the *fourth firing*, let them give fire againe, to *both flankes, leading* them up after they have fired, betweene the *midſt* of Pikes. When the laſt files are firing, advance your Pikes, and cloſe your *rankes* forwards to their order. Then, *face* to the *right* and *left*, and *charge* Pikes. Your Pikes being *advanced*, and *faced* againe to the *front* proper: all your Muskettiers will be in the *midſt*.

Then, open them ſome *Intervalles*; and let the fift firing be to the *front, wheeling* all *off* to the *right*, and *placing* themſelves in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions*. Then cauſe the Pikes to *charge*; and when your Pikes are *advanced* againe, let your halfe-files face about to the *right*.

And ſo the fixth firing, may be to the *front* and *reere*; the Muskettiers of the *front diviſion, wheeling off* to the *right*: thoſe of the *reere diviſion, wheeling off* to the *left*: either of them *placing* themſelves in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions*. The Muskettiers having fired *once* or *twice over*, *wheele* your *flankes*

into the *front*, and cause your Pikes to *charge* to the *front* and *reere*. The Pikes being againe *advanced*, and all *faced* to their former *front*, wheele *front* and *reere* into both *flankes*.

For the *seventh firing*, make the *Plinthium*, or foure *fronted battell*, the *Angles* being filled with Pikes: and let them giue fire, and *charge* their Pikes, according to directions for that Figure. As likewise the firing being ended, *reduce* the men backe into their *places*, as they were before this firing. Then, *wheele off* your *front* by *division*, which brings your Muskettiers upon the *flankes*; but doth not *reduce* your men justly into their places, if your *number* be any thing great.

From thence, make them a perfect *crosse battell*, and let your Muskettiers give fire, *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*, placing themselves in the *reere* of their owne *divisions* of Muskettiers.

For the *ninth firing*, let them giue fire as before; but place themselves in the *reere* of their Pikes; the Pikes *moving forwards* into their *ground*, and *charging*. Having *advanced* your Pikes, command your *flanke divisions* to *face* about to the *right*, and to close their *divisions*. Then command the *front* and *reere divisions* to *wheele* their *flankes* into the *reere*: which being done, *face* them to the *front proper*, (that is) after the *right file-leader*.

For the *tenth firing*, (your Muskettiers being still in the *midst*) let your Muskettiers give fire by *Introduction* (beginning with the second *ranke*) the Pikes moving softly forward.

For the *eleventh firing*, let them *give fire* by *Introduction*,

troduction, (beginning with the *Bringers up*) The Pikes may *charge* at diſcretion: then let the Muſkettiers ſtand, and the Pikes *march* forwards: cloſing their *diviſions* before the Muskettiers.

And ſo let the *twelfth firing* be by way of *Extraduction.* Let the Pikes *charge*; which being performed, command the *firſt* and *laſt* foure *rankes* to *ſtand*; and the reſt of the *body* to *face* to the *right* and *left:* and ſo to *march,* untill they are cleere of the *ſtanding rankes.* Then let the whole *body face about* to the *right,* and let the *Enſigne* diſplay his *Colours* in the midſt.

For the *next,* let the Muskettiers *give fire* being *foremoſt,* both in *front* and *flanke,* which will make the *thirteeenth firing.* Let them *wheele off* by *diviſion*; *placing* themſelves in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions* of Muskettiers. Which being done, next cauſe thoſe which *opened* to the *right* and *left,* to *face* in *oppoſition:* and to cloſe their *diviſion.* Then *wheele off* your *front* by *diviſion,* or elſe, *wheele your front inward* to the *reere.* Then let the Commander *march* at the head of his Pikes, all the Muskettiers being in the *reere.*

Then for the *fourteenth firing,* let the Muskettiers give fire in the *reere*; *wheeling off* by *diviſion,* and *flanking* their Pikes, which doth *reduce* every man to his *place* he had, when the *Exerciſe* firſt began. Aud herewith we will conclude our *third dayes Exerciſe,* and *lodge our Colours,* untill that the bellowing *Drum* call us the fourth time into the *field,* to give an account of our proficiency. Till when, we will leave our *Souldiers* in their ſeverall Hutts

or Cabines, there to rest their limbs, refresh their spirits, and repleniſh their *Bandeliers*.

Chap. CVIII.

The fourth daies Exercise.

HAving, the fourth time, brought your *Souldiers* into the *field*, and (as formerly) caused them to be instructed in the *Postures*, (both of *Musket* and *Pike*) that so they may be capable to use them both with *agility*, and with *safety*. As likewise taught them their divers wayes of *distance*, with the severall and various motions: not forgetting, particularly to instruct them with *rules* and *pertinent reasons* to every one of them: that so they may, not onely learne to *doe*, but like *rationall men*, *understand* what they doe. Which being deliberately performed, and each Officer disposed to his severall *place*, the *rankes* being *evened*, and the *files straitened*: the Captaine commands, the Drum beats, and the Muskettiers make ready for skirmish, &c.

You may either draw forth the innermost or outermost at discretion.

The *first firing*, being by *drawing forth* the *innermost files* of each *flanke* of Muskettiers, to the *right* and *left*, obliquely *before* the *front*, and so to stand and *give fire*. Having *given fire*, let the *Bringers up leade* them *back* into their *places*. And, in the meane time,

time, let the *next innermoſt files, leade forth* and *fire*, after the ſame manner; and ſo likewiſe the reſt, untill all the Muskettiers have *fired once over* that way.

For the *ſecond firing*, let them give fire *obliquely*, and *croſſe* the *front*, both at once.

For the *third*, let them give fire obliquely: the Muskettiers ſtanding before the Pikes, in forme of an *hollow wedge*. Vpon this firing, the Muskettiers fire *outwards*: whereas in the *other*, they fire *inward*.

For the *fourth firing*, let them fire upon the *oblique W*. For the *manner* of theſe firings, with the *waies* both how to *make* them & *reduce* them: I refer you to their ſeverall *places*, where I have ſhewne them plainely.

For the *fift firing*, let them fire to each *flanke obliquely*; the Muskettiers making on each *flanke*, the *formes* of *hollow wedges*: and ſo they may performe as much to each *flanke*, (or both *flankes*) as hath beene to the *front*.

For the *ſixt firing*, let them fire over the firſt *oblique* firing, to *front* and *reere*.

For the ſeventh *firing*, let them *fire obliquely*, and *croſſe* the *front* and *reere*.

For the eighth *firing*, let them *fire* to the *front* and *reere*, *obliquely*: in the *formes* of the *hollow wedges*.

For the ninth *firing*, let them *fire* to the *front* and *reere*, *obliquely*, in the *forme* of the W.

And for the tenth *firing*, let them *give fire obliquely*,

liquely, on the *Fort figure*, which is to *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*.

In all these *firings*, the *pikes* never come to *charge*, but *stand* in a *square battell*, in danger of the *enemies shot*: themselues neither being able to *offend the enemy*, nor to *defend themselues*. And yet if by frequent *practise*, they were *inured* to the use of the *long bow*, *fastened* to their *pikes*; I make no question, but that, when they should become *expert* in the use of the *Bow* and *Pike*; they would not onely be a *terrour* to their *enemies*, by the continuall *showers* of *Arrows* which they would send amongst them; but also that they would be a great meanes to *rout* their *enemies*, & utterly to *breake* their *order*. On the contrary, if *men* should be put to *use* the *Bow* and *Pike*, and have not first well learned the *use* of the *Pike* alone; they would be so *cumbersome* to themselues, and so *troublesome* to others; that instead of *spoyling* their *enemies*, they would rout themselues. But pardon this *digression*: whilest I proceed to the rest of this *dayes exercise*.

The eleventh *firing*, being in *forme* of a *Romane* T; is to be made as followeth. Let the *pikes*, *stand*, and the *flanks* of *Muskettiers wheele into* the *front*: then let them *give fire*, making an *Intervall* upon each *flanke*; the *Muskettiers* of the *right flanke wheeling off* to the *right*; the *Muskettiers* of the *left flank*, to the *left*; and *placing* themselues in the *reere* of their *owne divisions*. When the *Muskettiers* have *fired*, *once* or *twice* over, let the *pikes passe* through, and *wheele* their *front* into the *midst*, and then *facing* to the *front*, let them *charge* their *pikes*: and from

from thence having *advanced* their *pikes*, let the *Commander passe* to the *right flanke*; and *face* the whole *body* to the *right*. Then, *wheele* the *battell about* to the *left*, untill the *body* be brought into a *round battell*: from whence we will begin the *twelfth firing*.

The *figure* being made, *face* the whole *body* to the *Center*, and *give* them their *directions*, what they have to do. When they have received their *instructions*, let them all *face about* to the *right*; *present*, and *give fire*. The *first* time of their *firing*, *placing* themselues in the *reere* of their *Musketiers*; The *second firing*, *countermarching* to the *right*, and *placing* themselues in the *reere* of their *pikes*; The *pikes*, at the same time, are to *move* forwards into the Musketiers ground: where they may *charge over head*; and (if need be) at the *foot*: the Musketiers *giving fire* over them, as in the *Convex-halfe-moone*. The *firing* being ended, and the *pikes* advanced, let the *Commander march* forth of the *round Battell*: at that part, where he shall finde all his *proper file-leaders*. Then let the whole *body*, be *faced* to that *part*, and the file-leaders caused to *march forth*, *even* a *breast*: the *Musketiers* and *pikemen* following their *leaders*, and *marching*, untill the *body* have atteined their *orderly square againe*. But note, that all your *Musketiers* are in the *midst* of the *battell*.

For the thirteenth *firing*, make the *impaled sollid square*: the way to performe it is as followeth: Your *pikes* being now the *flankers*, *draw forth* the *moitie* of the *files* of *pikemen*, from the *right flanke*, crosse the *front* of the *body* (taking the *outmost-files*)

let *halfe* the *files* of *pikemen* of the *left flanke*, be *drawne crosse* the *reere*, following their *bringers up*. Then, *face* all your Muskettiers to the *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*. The pikes may *charge*, all *overhand*: and (if need be) at the *foot*, with their *swords drawn*: the *Muskettiers firing over* them. Having *fired*, *charged*, and *advanced* their Pikes, *draw off* the Pikes, againe, from the *front* and *reere*, into their *places*.

For the fourteenth *firing*, (the Muskettiers being ſtill in the *middle*) make the *hollow fronted-croſſe-battell*; the Pikemen making the *hollow*, upon the flanks of the Muskettiers. For the making whereof, *wheele* the *front off* the 2. *firſt ranks*, into the *midſt*. That being done, *wheele* the *reer* of the 2 *laſt ranks*, after the ſame manner: and then *face* the reſt of the *body* to the *right* and *left*; and cauſe them to *march* untill there be a *ſquare hollow*, *in the middeſt* of the *battell*. Then *command* them to *face* to the *front*, *reere*, and *flanks*: which being in like manner performed, cauſe the *Pikes* (who are now in the *front* of the *Muskettiers*) to *open* to the *right* and *left*; the *laſt ranke* of *Pikes*, *ranking* even with the *firſt ranke* of *Muskettiers*. The *Muskettiers* may *give fire* upon this *figure*, *wheeling* all *off* to the *right*: and *placing* themſelues in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions* of Muskettiers. If need be, the Pikes may *cloſe* their *diviſions* before their Muskettiers; and *charge* their Pikes. Which being done, and the Pikes againe *advanced*: we will come to the *reducement*. For which purpoſe, *face* the whole *body about* to the *Center*: and cauſe the *flanke-diviſions* to *cloſe* to their *order*. This being executed, let the *front-diviſion*

sion wheele together their *front*, into the *midst* (as they now stand *faced*) the *reere-division* doing the like. That being in like manner performed, *face* the whole *body* to the *front proper*: then *wheele off* the *battell* to the *right* and *left:* after which having *closed* their *divisions*, they are perfectly *reduced* as at first. And herewith we will conclude this *dayes exercise*, and leave our *Souldiers* to *rest:* untill that the *morrows Sunne*, and the *thundering Drumme*, shall *call* us forth againe into the *Field*.

Chap. CIX.

The fifth dayes Exercise.

HAving the fift time brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*, if you have leasure, it will not be amisse for to cause them to be instructed (in the first place) in the *Postures* of the *Pike* and *Musket*. For those *Souldiers* which by often practice of their *Postures* are growne *perfect*, will *manage* their *Armes* with *ease*, *surety*, and *celerity:* when, on the contrary, the *unpractised Souldier*, will be a *trouble* to himselfe, a *danger* to his *fellowes*, and a *Dormant* to his *Enemies*.

After the *Postures*, each *file* being *drawne* into his *place*; and the *Ensigne* (according to former directions)

rections) brought to the *head* of the *Pikes*; the Rankes *evened*, and the *files streitned*; the *Captaine* (having commanded silence, and delivered himselfe in such tearmes, as the present occasion doth require, ever preferring the *industrious* and *painfull*; and, on the contrary, blaming the *careless* and the slothfull) he next proceeds to instruct them in their *severall distances*: and these, indeed, are the *grounds* of all *motion*: seeing that without *distance*, the *motion* cannot be *executed*. Next to the distances, they are to be instructed in the *motions*: ever observing to each *motion*, its due *distance*.

Next after *Postures*, *distance*, and *motions*; let the rest of the *dayes Exercise* be spent in *firings* and *figures* of *Battaile*. Each *Officer*, having now received his severall *Charge*: The *Captaine commands*; the *Drums*, *beat*, and the *Muskettiers*, *make ready*.

The *first firing* being performed by *leading* forth the *outmost file* of each *Flanke* twenty paces (or thereabout) before the *Front*; and now come to the *place* of *firing*: let the *second men*, *ranke* to the *right* and *left inward*, *even* with their *Leaders*: and so *give fire*, together, *wheeling off* by *division*: the *right Flanke* to the *right*, the *left flanke* to the *left*; *placing* themselves on the *inside* of their *owne divisions* of *Muskettiers* next the *Pikes file-wise*, as they were when they *marched forth*. So soon as the *first* two *men* of their *files*, have after this manner *ranked*, *fired*, and *wheeled off*; the *next second men*, *ranke even* with their *Leaders*, as before: *giving* fire, and *wheeling* away to place themselves, *file-wise*, after their *Leaders*. The residue of their *first files*

files are to do: the like; and so still the *outermost files leading* forth, doing in like manner, and still *placing* themselves, *file-wise*, next to the *Pikes*.

For the second *firing*, cause the *outermost files* to *march forth* to the former *distance* before the front: And whereas in the *last firing*, they *ranked* but two and two, and so *gave fire*: now, let them *ranke* foure. That is to say, the three *men next* behind the *right-hand-file-leader*, shall ranke *inward* to the *left*, *even* with their *File-leaders*: the three *next men*, after the *left-hand-file-leader*, *ranking* inwards to the *right*; *even abrest* with the *leader* of their *file*: the residue of each *file*, keeping themselves in *file*; and *closing forwards* to the *distance* of *order*, just after their *File-leaders*. The first foure of each *file*, having *presented*, *fired*, and *wheeled away*; the *last foure men* (being the *Reere-half-files*) in the *interim* of their *wheeling* off, *ranke* to the *right* and *left inward*: *presenting*, *firing*, and *wheeling off* (as aforesaid) and *placing* themselves in the *Reere* of the *former part* of their *files*, which *wheeled away* before them. The *second Files* are then to lead *forth*, and to doe the like; and so successively, the *rest*, untill they have all *fired over*, this way.

For the third firing, let the *outermost files lead forth* to the same *distance* before the *Front*; whither being come, as to the place wherein to doe their *execution*; let the *files ranke* to the *right* and *left inward*; and so *fire* all together: *wheeling off*, and *placing* themselves as in the *former firings*. The residue of the other *Files* of *Musketiers*, at the same time, *marching forth*; *giving fire*, and still

placing

placing themſelves *file-wiſe*, on the *innermoſt part* of their *own diviſions* of *Musketticrs*; and *next* to the *outſide* of *Pikes*.

For the fourth firing, cauſe your Muskettiers to *ranke* to the *right* and *left*, into the *front*; and ſo the whole *body* of Muskettiers give fire at once: which being performed, let them *face* to the *right* and *left inward*, and ſo march into their *places*.

They may (if you pleaſe) *open* the *files* of Muſkettiers, to *double diſtance*, and ſo cauſe the *files* to *ranke* to the *right* into the *front*, by *Converſion*: giving fire after that manner, which (if it be done) will make the fift firing.

After this, let them *fall backe* into their *places*, and having *made ready* againe, before you *cloſe* their *diſtance*, cauſe the halfe-files to *face about*, and then let the *files ranke* into the *front* and *reere*, and ſo give fire: which will make the *ſixt firing*. Having thus fired, and being *fallen backe* into their *places*, let the halfe files, *face* againe to their *leader*; and the *files* of Muskettiers *cloſe* againe to their *order*.

For the *ſeventh firing*, let the *rankes* of Musketiers *open* backe to their *double diſtance*; and the Muskettiers, *wheele* to the *right* and *left* by *Converſion*: and ſo give fire to both *flankes*.

The men being returned to their *places*, and having againe *cloſed* their *rankes* to their *order*: after ſome little *pauſe*, by *marching*, (or otherwiſe) the Muskettiers being all againe *ready*; *command* your *files* of Pikes to *open* to the *right* and *left*, to their *double diſtance*. Then *command*, *rankes* both of

Muſ-

Muskets and Pikes, to *open backward* to their *double distance.* Which being done, *command* the Muskets to *invert* to the *right* and *left outward*; and then to *face outward,* and *present*; and let the *halfe-files* of Pikes *face about.* Then cause your files of Pikes, to *ranke* to the *front* and *reere* by *conversion*: and let the Muskettiers *give fire,* and the Pikes *charge.*

This figure will take up a great quantity of *ground,* because that all the Muskettiers are now become two rankes: that is to say, to each *flanke* one, all the Pikes being likewise brought into two *rankes,* one to the *front,* and the other to the *reere.* This being performed, the *body* will stand in form of a great *hollow Square.*

The *M*uskettiers hauing fired, the Pikes being *advanced,* and each *Souldier returned* to his *place,* and all *faced* to their *leader*: let them *close* their *rankes* and *files* to their *order.* Then cause the *ninth firing,* to be performed to both *flankes,* upon a *stand: facing* the whole *body* to the *right* and *left,* there *firing* and *wheeling off* by *division,* and *flanking* their Pikes. Whilest the two last *rankes* are *giving fire,* let the Pikes *port,* and when the *M*usketteers have *fired,* and *wheeled off,* let them *charge.*

Having *advanced* their Pikes, *face* the whole *body* to that part where you shall finde your *file-leaders* of *M*uskettiers: then will all your *M*uskettiers, be in *front* and *reere.* Next, command your *halfe-files* that then are, to *double* your *front* to the *left entire*: which being done, let them *face* to the *right* and *left,* the *Muskettiers giving fire,* and *wheeling off* to the *left,* and *placing* themselves in the *reere* of their owne

owne *divisions*. The Pikes may also *port*, and *charge*, at discretion. The Pikes being *advanced*, and the whole *Company*, *faced* to their *former front*, *command* the *halfe-rankes* of the *right*, (both *Muskettiers* and Pikes) to *march*, and the *halfe-rankes* of the *left flanke* to follow in the *reere*.

Having given them some time of breathing; then for the *eleventh firing*, cause the *halfe-files* that then are, (*Muskettiers* and Pikes) to *face* to the *reere*. Which being done, let the *Muskettiers* give fire to the *front* and *reere*, upon a *stand*, *wheeling off* by *division*, and *placing* themselves in the *reere* of their Pikes; they *moving forwards*, and *maintaining* the *Muskettiers ground*. The *Pikes* are then to *charge*, when they are *cleered* of their *Muskettiers*. Which being done, and they againe *advanced*, *face* them all to their *former front*.

For the twelfth *firing*, *command halfe-files* to *double* the *front inward*, *intire*. To which purpose, *open* the *front halfe-files* (both Muskettiers and Pikes) to the *right* and *left*; for receiving the *halfe-files* of both *Armes*, within them: which being executed, each *Armes* will stand in three *divisions*. Then *command* the *front halfe-files*, to *face about* to the *reere*, and to *present*: The *Reere halfe-files* keeping still *faced* to the *front*; and there in like manner presenting, and both *giving fire* together. The first time of their *firing over*, they may *fall* in the *Reere* of their *owne divisions* of *Muskettiers*; *wheeling off* to the *right* and *left*. The second time of *giving fire* upon this *figure*, let them *wheele off*, as before; and *place* themselues in the *Reere* of their *following divi-*

sions

sions of *Pikes*. Which being in like manner performed, let the *Pikes*, *charge*. Being againe *advanced*; *face* the *body* to the *former front*; and *command*, *halfe-files* that *doubled*, to *face* to the *Reere*, and *march* into their *places*. The *halfe-files* being *faced about*, and *marched cleare off*, then are the *front halfe-files* to *close* their *divisions*. Thus being all rightly *faced*, the *Muskettiers* will be in the *front* and *reere*.

For the thirteenth *firing*, make the *horned battell* to the *front* and *reere*. For the which, cause the *halfe-files* of Muskettiers and Pikes, to *face* to the *reere*. Then cause the Muskettiers to *open* to the *right* and *left*, (both in *front* and *reere*) and so to *give fire*: *wheeling off* by *division*, and flanking their Pikes. The Pikes may also *charge*: Having *advanced*, let them all *face* to their *leader* at the *proper front*.

Lastly, for the fourteenth *firing*, make the *Sconce Battell*. For further directions wherein, turne backe to the 93. *Chapter*; where you may finde *instructions*, as well for the making, *giving of fire*, and *reducing* thereof. And if you please, your *Ensigne* may *display* his *Colours*, in the *hollow part* of the *midst* of the Pikes.

Supposing now, that by this time, the *night* hath almost overtaken us; we will prepare to *lodge* our *Colours*, with our accustomed *Bene-vale*: and herewith we will conclude this our *fifth dayes Exercise*; suffering our *Souldiers* to depart to their severall *habitations*. There leaving them to *clense* their *arms*, and to *refresh* their *bodies*, untill the *morrows clamouring Drum*, doth invite us forth to our *sixth dayes Exercise*.

CHAP.

Chap. CX.

The sixt dayes Exercise.

HAving the sixth time brought your *Souldiers* into the *Field*, according to the accustomed manner: let each *File-leader*, *exercise* his *File*, in the *Postures* of such *Armes*, as they carry. Which being performed, and the *Files* againe *rejoyned* into one *body*: the *Ensigne* being at the *head* of *the Pikes*, and the rest of the *Officers* in their severall *places*: The *Captaine* having *commanded silence*, *attention*, and *obedience* (three especiall *vertues*, most necessarily requisite to every *common Souldier*) hee proceeds to the severall *distances*; instructing them in the *uses* of each of them. Next after the *distances*, he teaches them the *Facings*, the *Doublings*, the *Countermarches*, and the *Wheelings*, with severall *Observations* upon each of the *Motions*. After which (having so *commanded*) The *Drums*, *beat*; and the *Muskettiers*, *make ready* for *Skirmish*: Then (if you please) you may cause three or foure of the *first firings*, to be performed by *light Skirmishing* before the *Front*: and that with *loose Ranks*, or *Files*, or both: either some of those, (or such like) as I have formerly

spoken

ſpoken off in the *preceding Exerciſes*. After which, for your *next firing*; cauſe your *Half-files* to *open* to the *right* and *left*, by *equall diviſion*: untill the *Reere Diviſions* of *Pikes*, ſtands right after the Muſkettiers of the *Front-diviſion*. Now the Muskettiers ſtanding in foure *Diviſions*, let them all *preſent*, and give fire to the *Front*: *wheeling all off* to the *right*, and *placing* themſelves in the *Reere* of their *own diviſions* of like *Armes*: each Ranke, ſtill making good the Leaders ground. Having *given fire*, *once* or *twice* over on this *Figure*: For the ſecond *firing* cauſe the *Front-diviſion* to give fire to the *Front*; and the two *Reere diviſions*, to each *Flanke* in a *March*. The *Front-diviſion* with *fires* in *Ranke*, *wheele* all off to the *right*; *placing* themſelves in the *Reere* of their *owne Diviſions* of *Muskettiers*: the other *Diviſions* with fire in *flanke*, *leading up* their *files* betweene their *owne diviſions* of *Muskettiers* and the *Pikes*.

Having *given fire once* or *oftner over*, according to diſcretion this way; let the third firing be performed upon a *ſtand*. For the which, cauſe your *reere-diviſions* to *face* to the *right* and *left outward*: the *front-diviſion*, ſtill to continue the ſame *aſpect*. Then, let the *Muskettiers give fire*, thoſe of the *right flanke*, *wheeling off* to the *right*: and the *contrary flanke*, to the *contrary hand*; the *Muskettiers* of the *front diviſion*, *placing* themſelues in the *reere* of their *owne diviſions* of *Muskets*; the *Muskettiers* of the *reere diviſions*, *placing* themſelues in the *reere* of the *reere diviſions* of Pikes: each *ranke* of Muſkettiers, ſtill making *good* his *leaders ground*. When

they have *fired all over*, let the Pikes *charge*, to *front* and both *flanks*.

Having *advanced* your Pikes againe, and *faced* your *body* to the *front proper*, each *Armes* ſtill ſtandeth in three *diviſions*. Then let the fourth *firing*, be to the *reere*, and both *flanks* upon a *march*. And to that end, *open* your *front-diviſions* of Muskettiers to the *right* and *left*, untill they are *cleere* of the *reere-diviſions* of Pikes: that ſo they be not *troubleſome* unto them, in their *march*. Then let your *pikes ſhoulder*; and the Muskettiers, *give fire*: the *front diviſions* of Muskettiers, *firing* in flanke, and *leading up* on the *inſide* of their *owne diviſions*. The Muſkettiers of the *reere diviſion*, *giving fire* in the *reere* in *ranke wheeling off* by *diviſion*, and placing themſelves in the *front* of their owne *diviſions* of *Muſkettiers*. Having *fired once over*, and the *Pikes charged*; let your fifth *firing* be to the *Reere*, and *both flankes* upon a *ſtand*. In the which, let the *half-files* (both *Muskettiers* and *Pikes*) *face to* the *Reere*; the *Front-diviſion* to the *right* and *left*, and ſo *give fire* one *each part*; thoſe that *fire* to the *flankes wheeling off*, and *placing* themſelves in the *Reere* of their *diviſions* of *Pikes*, and the *Muskets* of the *Reere diviſions*, *wheeling off* to the *right* and *left*, and *placing* themſelves in the *Reere* of their *owne diviſions* of *Musketties*: each *Ranke moving forward* into their *Leaders ground*. Having *fired over*, let the *Pikes charge*. The *Pikes* being againe *advanced*; *face the whole body* to the *proper front*: and then all the *Muſkettiers* will be in the *midſt*, and the *Pikemen* on the *flankes*.

For

For the ſixth *firing*, cauſe your *half-rankes* of the *left*, *double* your *right flanke* by *diviſion*. For further *directions*, looke back to the *tripartite firing*: which you ſhall find, *Chap.* 92. Having *fired* over that way; *charged*, and *re-advanced* your *pikes*: *face* the whole *body* to their *former front*.

For your *ſeventh firing*, cauſe the *front* and *reere diviſions* of Muskettiers and Pikes, to *face* to the *right*: the *reſt* of the *body* (both Muskets and Pikes) to the *left*. Let the Muskettiers *give fire*, and *wheele* all *off*, either to the *right* or *left*, and *place* themſelves in the *reere* of their *following diviſions* of Pikes; each *ranke* ſtill moving up into their *leaders ground*. When there reſt but two *rankes* of each *diviſion*, to *fire*, let the Pikes *port*. Having all *fired*, and *wheeled away*; let the Pikes *charge*. Then, *face* the whole *body* to their *firſt front*; and command the *firſt* and *laſt* foure *rankes* to *face* to the *left*: and to *march*, untill they are *cleere* of the *ſtanding part* of the *Body*. Then, cauſe the *front halfe-files*, to *face* to the *left*, the *reere halfe-files*, to the *right*: and ſo to *cloſe* their *diviſions*: and after that to face towards their *leader*.

For the *eight firing*, make the *ſollid Square girdled* with Muskettiers. For the which, *draw halfe* the *files* of the *right flanke* of Muskettiers, *croſſe* the *front*, and halfe the *files* of Muskettiers of the *left flanke*, *croſſe* the *reere*. Then *face* the whole *body* (both Muskets and Pikes (to the *front*, *reere*, and *flankes*. This done, let the Muskettiers *give fire*, and *wheele* off by *diviſion*: *placing* themſelves in the *reere* of their owne *diviſions* of Muskettiers.

All the time of this *firing*, the Pikemen, being in the *middle* of the *Muskettiers*, have good opportunity (if the *enemy* be neere) to *gall* them with their thicke *showers* of *feathered shot*. The *Muskettiers*, in the meane time, having *fired once, twice*, or *oftner over*, on this Figure, draw your *files* of *Muskettiers* backe againe into their *places*.

Then having *faced* the whole *body* to the *proper front*, let your *ninth firing*, be *Captaine Wallers double firing to the front and reere*, after this manner. First, *wheele front* and *reere* into the *right flanke*: then *face* them all the *same* way they were before: which done, cause the *halfe-files* to *face* to the *reere*, and *command* the *Muskettiers* which are in the *reere* of each division of Pikes, to *double* their *front* of Pikes by *division*. Then, let them *face about* and *close* their *divisions*: and so having *refaced* them as they *were*; let them *give fire*, *wheele off*, and *charge*, according to directions on Captaine *Wallers* Figure.

For the *tenth firing*, let them *face* to the *right* and *left*, and give fire to both *flankes* upon a *stand*: *wheeling off* by *division*, and *flanking* their *Pikes*. When the *Pikes* have *charged*, and are againe *advanced*, let the *Captaine* passe to the *front accidentall* of the *left flanke*, and *face* the rest of the *body* to him, and in the next place wheele their *flanks* into the *front*, and so all the *Muskettiers* will be in the *front*: and by *facing* the whole *body* to the *left*; all the Muskettiers will be on the *right flanke*.

Let the eleventh *figure* be the *Diamond Battell*. Having *given fire* two or three severall wayes, according

cording to the *directions* upon that *figure*; *charged Pikes*, and *reduced* them againe into the *Square: face* the *body about* to the *right*; and *passe* the *Musketiers* which belong to the *right flanke*, betweene the *ranks* of *pikes* into their *places*. Then, the Musketiers of the *left flanke*, being *closed* to their *Pikes*, the *Body* will stand at their *first order*.

For the twelfth *firing*, make the *hollow Square girdled with shot:* let them *give fire* upon that *figure* (both *without* and *within*) according to the *directions* for that *firing*. Let the *Pikes*, *charge*; and *reduce* them in the same manner as I have *discoursed* upon that *figure*.

For the thirteenth *firing*, Make the *Plesium* as you shall finde *directions* in the 104. *Chapter*.

Having made it, *given fire* upon it, and *reduced* it as at first.

Let the fourteenth and last *firing* for this *exercise*, be the *Hollow Hearse* and *Crosse*. Turne backe to the 103. *Chapter*, where you may finde ample *instructions* for the *making*, *firing*, and *reducing* of it. And lastly, that you may *conclude* with *triumph*, cause your *Ensigne* to be *displayed* in the *middle* of the *Hollow Crosse*: and then having *fired*, *charged pikes*, and *reduced* your *men*, according to the directions on that *figure*, your *men* will be as at first. And therefore seeing that by this time *night* is *come*; and our *powder* gone; we will here give *conclusion* to our *sixth dayes Exercise*.

Wherefore, that you may observe some *forme* in the *lodging* of our *Colours*; cause your *Musketiers* to *march* in the *front* of your *pikes*. Then, as as they

march, let them *invert* to the *right* and *left*: which is, when the Ranks *file* to the *right* and *left*, by *division*. Then, cause all your Muskettiers to *face in opposition*; to cocke their *Matches*, *guard* their *Pans*, and *rest* their Muskets. In the meane time, let the *pikes advance*, and *close* their *ranks* and *files*, to their *order*. Which being done, the *Captaine*, *Lieutenant*, *Ensigne*, and *Drummes beating* a *Troope*, at the *head* of the *pikes*: *passe through* this *Guard* into the *appointed place* for the *allodgement* of the *Ensigne*. Then, the *Serjeants* cause the *Muskettiers* to *face* all *about* to the *right*, *and present*: and upon the *first beat* of the *Drumme*, they all *give fire* in one *Volley*. And now having performed our *sixth dayes Exercise*, the *Drumme beats* a *Call*: and makes *proclamation*, that *every man may depart unto his severall home*, *untill his next Summons into the Field*.

FINIS.

The Contents of every Chapter contained in this Booke.

Chap. 1. page 1.

Oncerning Postures and handling of Armes.

The Postures of the Musket. page 3

2 *Of the Postures of the Pike,* page 7

3 *Of the Drum,* page 11

4 *Of Rankes and Files, their places and dignities,* p. 13

5 *Reasons for precedency of dignity in Rankes and Files.* page 15

6 *Of severall Distances,* page 20

7 *Of marching a Company in divisions at length, the order and places of the Officers, and againe drawing them into forme of battell,* p. 24

8 *Of drawing the Divisions up into a square,* p. 26

9 *What is facing, and the use of the word, whether to be used or refused,* p. 28

10 *Of facing square, and how to performe it, the usefulnesse of Facings, and the severall parts thereof,* page 30

11 *Of Doublings, the use and parts,* p. 34

12 *Of Inversion and Conversion, and of doubling Rankes.* p. 40

Chap. page
13 *Of doublings of Files,* p.42
14 *Of doublings by Bringers up,* p.43
15 *Of doublings of Files outward and inward,* page 46
16 *Of doubling by halfe Files,* p. 48
17 *Of doublings the Reere by Front halfe Files,* page 50
18 *Of doubling the Reere by Countermarch,* p.53
19 *Of doubling Flankes by wayes of Countermarch,* page 54
20 *Of doubling halfe Files to the right intire, to accommodate the doubling of halfe Rankes,* p. 57
21 *The difference betweene intire and divisionall doublings, and of doubling halfe Files intire,* p. 61
22 *Of doubling the Front inward intire,* p.63
23 *Of halfe Files, doubling the Front by division,* page 66
24 *Of doubling the Reere by division,* p.67
25 *Of doubling the Reere intire, by the front halfe Files,* p. 70
26 *Of doubling by halfe ranke intire,* p.72
27 *Of doubling of Flankes by division,* p. 75
28 *Of doubling Rankes intire,* p. 77
29 *Of doubling Files intire, advancing,* p. 79
30 *Of Files doubling their depth,* p. 82
31 *Of Conversion and Inversion, with their words of Command, and reducements,* p.85
32 *Of Files filing in sequence,* p.88
33 *Of inverting Ranks, or Ranks filing,* p. 90
34 *Of Ranks filing by division, and how usefull,* page 92
35 *Of*

Chap. page
35 *Of the seuerall parts of Conuersion, and how they are to be understood,* p. 94
36 *Of Rankes wheeling by conuersion,* p. 97
37 *Of Files ranking in equall part,* p. 101
38 *The conclusion of Doublings,* p. 105
39 *Of Countermarches. The antiquity, and words of direction,* p. 108
40 *Of the* Chorean Countermarch: *and the way to performe it,* p. 112
41 *Of* Countermarching *to loose ground,* p. 114
42 *Of* Countermarches *to gaine ground, or the* Macedonian Countermarch, p. 117
43 *Of the* Bastard Countermarch, p. 119
44 *Of* Countermarching Rankes, *to maintaine ground,* p. 121
45 *Of* Countermarching Rankes *to loose ground,* p. 122
46 *Of the* Macedonian Countermarch *by* Rank, p. 124
47 *Of* Countermarching Front *and* Reere *to the middest,* p. 125
48 *Of bringing* Front *and* Reere, *together into the middest by the* Bastard Countermarch, p. 128
49 *Of* Countermarching, *to make a large interuall, betweene the first and last* Ranke, p. 130
50 *Of making a large Interuall, betweene the first & last Rankes, by the Macedonian Countermarch,* p. 132
51 *Of interchanging ground.* p. 134
52 *Of countermarching the flanks (or wings) into the midst of the Battell.* p. 136

53 *Of*

Chap. page

53 *Of countermarching, to take the ground before the flankes,* p.138

54 *Of Countermarching to take the ground on the out side of the Flankes, and to direct their Aspects inwards.* p.140

55 *Of taking the ground on the outside of the flanks; not altering the Aspects.* p.142

56 *Of Interchanging Ground by the Flanks, and bringing the innermost files of Pikes, to become the outmost rankes.* p.144

57 *Of wheeling, their kindes, and uses with their severall words of Command.* p.148

58 *Of wheelings Anguler,* p.150

59 *Of wheeling on the Center.* p.152

60 *Of wheeling off, by division.* p.154

61 *Of wheeling the Front inward, towards the Reere.* p.156

62 *Of bringing the Flanks into the Front of the Battell,* p.158

63 *Of wheeling the Reere into the midst of the Battell,* p.161

64 *Of wheeling the right flanke, into the midst of the Battell,* p.164

65 *Of wheeling the left Flanke into the midst of the Battell,* p.167

66 *Of wheeling Front and Reere, into the midst of the Battell,* p.169

67 *Of wheeling the flanks into the midst of the Battell,* p.172

68 *Of making men file-leaders successively, the files being eight deepe,* p.176

69 *Of*

Chap. page

69 *Of making men file-leaders ſucceſſively: the files being but ſixe deepe,* p. 179

70 *Of drawing the Files againe into a Body: and preparing them for a skirmiſh,* p. 183

71 *Of firing by forlorne files. The manner, and uſe,* page 186

72 *Of firings by two Ranks, ten paces advanced before the front: Next, even with the front; and laſtly, even with the halfe files,* p. 190

73 *Of the Horne-battell; how to make it: and to reduce it by firing,* p. 195

74 *Of the Demie-hearſe Battell: The uſe of the figure; how to make it, and to reduce it by firing,* p. 198

75 *Of giving fire, advancing, by way of Introduction: with the beneficiall uſe of the Bow and Pike,* page 201

76 *The way to make the Diamond Battell: ſeverall wayes to fire upon it: with divers other figures and firings, which are thereby produced,* p. 204

77 *Of the Convex Halfe Moone; The uſe of the Figure: and of ſeverall wayes of firing upon it.* p. 211

78 *Of Extraduction: the ſeverall uſes, firings, and Reducements.* p. 215

79 *Of the Broad-fronted Battell: with the wayes of firing upon it.* p. 218

80 *Of diſmarching, or firing in the Reere: the ſeverall wayes, and how they ought to be performed.* p. 221

81 *Of firings in flanke, in generall; and more particularly, of the gathering firing.* p. 226

82 *The ſecond manner of giving fire to the flanke.* p. 229

Chap. page

83 *A firing in flanke, led off by the Bringers up.* p. 131

84 *The difference betweene Firings in Flanke, marching: and of bringing the Muskettiers on the outside of the Pikes.* p.234

85 *Of Firing in Flanke: aud placing the Musket-tiers in the midst of the Battell of Pikes: with other firings from thence proceeding.* p.237

86 *Of firing to the front and reere, upon a march.* p.242

87 *A second way of firing to the front and reere.* p. 245

88 *A firing to the reere and right flanke, marching.* p.247

89 *Of firing to both flanks, marching.* p.249

90 *A firing to both Flanks, standing.* p.251

91 *Captaine* Wallers *Triple firing to the Front.* p.254

92 *A firing tripartite, doing execution to the front, reere, and right flanke.* p.257

93 *Of the Sconce Battell.* p.259

94 *Of firing by three files at once; two of them standing oblique, the other direct.* p.262

95 *A firing oblique, by foure files together, in forme of a* W. p.264

96 *Of the Fort Battell; the way to make, and to reduce it.* p.266

97 *Of the crosse Battell; the way to make it with a private Company. How to fire upon it: and to reduce it.* p.268

98 *Of the hollow-fronted Crosse Battell, how to make*

it

it with a private Company : and the way to fire upon it, &c. p.272

99 *Of firing upon the ſquare Battell, flanked with Pikes.* p.274

100 *Of the Plinthium, or foure-fronted-battell; by us called the Croſſe of Muskets, flanked with Pikes.* p.276

101 *Of the Hollow Square for march.* p.280

102 *Of the hollow Hearſe, and the Croſſe.* p.283

103 *Of the Hollow Square, girdled with ſhot.* p.286

104 *Of the Sollid Square, with Muskettiers in Center and Angles. The way to make the figure with a private Companie : how to fire upon it, and to reduce it.* p.291

105 *The firſt dayes Exerciſe.* p.297

106 *The ſecond dayes Exerciſe.* p.299

107 *The third Dayes Exerciſe.* p.304

108 *The fourth dayes Exerciſe.* p.308

109 *The fifth dayes Exerciſe.* p.313

110 *The ſixth dayes Exerciſe.* p.320

FINIS.

Faults escaped in the Printing.

PAge 17. line 5. for and, reade ad, p. 25. l. 32. r. before, p. 34. first line of the 11. Chap. r. to, p. 36. in the margent, r. particle, p. 64. l. 13. r. armies, p. 74. l. 9. r. all, p. 78 l. 8. r. least, p. 86. l. 6. r. or, p. 86. l. 19. r. to, p. 87. l. 8. r. without, p. 87. l 23. r. drawne a figure. p 89. l 6. r. left, p. 89. l. 17. r. file-wise, p. 97. l. the last, r. satisfie, p. 106. l. 3. r. one, p. 108. l. 9. r. in, p. 112. l. 5. r. before, p. 117. l. 4. r. file-leaders, p. 119. l. 19. & 20. r. and with the Chorean it holds no affinity, p. 124. the last line, r. be as at first. p. 127. the 2 m m which stand for the outmost file-leaders to the right, stand quite contrary. p. 137. l. 5. r. to. p. 140. the figure set wrong. p 152 l. 8. r. too p. 166. l. 11. r. flanks. p. 173. l. 13. r. outermost. p. 176. l. 32. r. figured. p. 207. l. 14. r. commanded. p. 217. l 4. r. up. p. 250. l. 8. r. firing. p. 269. l. 18. r. them. p. 271. l. 11. r. armes. p 292. l. 13. r. flanks. p. 293. the title of the figure, r. Plesium. p. 296. l. 6. r. to her severall, &c. p. 297. the marginall note opposite to the 22. line, r. instead of one file and close. One file of Musketiers to give fire, and close, p. 302 l. the 9. for horswise, r. herswise, p. 306. l. 17. for Leader, r. Leaders, p 311. l. 17. for overhead, r. overhand.